HOMOLOGICAL ALGEBRA FOR COMMUTATIVE MONOIDS

BY
JARET FLORES

A dissertation submitted to the
Graduate School—New Brunswick
Rutgers, The State University of New Jersey
In partial fulfillment of the requirements
For the degree of
Doctor of Philosophy
Graduate Program in Mathematics
Written under the direction of
Charles Weibel
And approved by

__________________________
__________________________
__________________________
__________________________

New Brunswick, New Jersey
January, 2015
ABSTRACT OF THE DISSERTATION

Homological Algebra for Commutative Monoids

by JARET FLORES

Dissertation Director:
Charles Weibel

We first study commutative, pointed monoids providing basic definitions and results in a manner similar commutative ring theory. Included are results on chain conditions, primary decomposition as well as normalization for a special class of monoids which lead to a study monoid schemes, divisors, Picard groups and class groups. It is shown that the normalization of a monoid need not be a monoid, but possibly a monoid scheme.

After giving the definition of, and basic results for, $A$-sets, we classify projective $A$-sets and show they are completely determine by their rank. Subsequently, for a monoid $A$, we compute $K_0$ and $K_1$ and prove the Devissage Theorem for $G_0$. With the definition of short exact sequence for $A$-sets in hand, we describe the set $Ext(X,Y)$ of extensions for $A$-sets $X,Y$ and classify the set of square-zero extensions of a monoid $A$ by an $A$-set $X$ using the Hochschild cosimplicial set.

We also examine the projective model structure on simplicial $A$-sets showcasing the difficulties involved in computing homotopy groups as well as determining the derived category for a monoid. The author defines the category $Da(C)$ of double-arrow complexes for a class of non-abelian categories $C$ and, in the case of $A$-sets, shows an adjunction with the category of simplicial $A$-sets.
Acknowledgements

The author would like to thank Charles Weibel for years of advising including the collaboration leading to [9] which constitutes part of Chapter 2 and all of Chapter 4. The author would also like to thank classmate Knight Fu and colleague Oliver Lorscheid for the many discussions on topics covered in this thesis.
Dedication

This paper is dedicated to my friends, family and classmates whose support contributed to my successful navigation of graduate school and its many obstacles. And also to my advisor whose generous patience allowed for the completion of this paper.
# Table of Contents

Abstract ................................................................. ii
Acknowledgements ....................................................... iii
Dedication ................................................................. iv

1. Introduction .......................................................... 1

2. The commutative algebra of monoids ................................. 5
   2.1. Monoids and ideals ............................................... 5
       2.1.1. Morphisms of monoids ..................................... 7
       2.1.2. Ideals and quotients ...................................... 7
       2.1.3. Prime ideals and units .................................... 10
   2.2. $A$-sets .......................................................... 12
       2.2.1. Morphisms of $A$-sets .................................... 14
       2.2.2. Free $A$-sets ............................................... 15
       2.2.3. $A$-subsets and quotients ................................. 15
       2.2.4. Admissible exact sequences ............................... 18
   2.3. Tensor products ................................................ 21
       2.3.1. Tensor product of monoids ................................ 22
   2.4. Localization .................................................... 25
   2.5. Chain conditions ............................................... 28
       2.5.1. Artinian monoids .......................................... 33
   2.6. Primary decomposition ......................................... 34
   2.7. Normal and factorial monoids .................................. 36

3. Homological algebra ................................................ 41
Chapter 1

Introduction

As pointed out in [7], Jacques Tits’ question about the existence of $F_1$, the “field with one element,” spawned interest in commutative, pointed monoids. In this paper we consider $F_1 = \{0, 1\}$ to be the multiplicative monoid having only an identity and zero element. An $F_1$ “algebra” $A = F_1[S]$ consists of all monomials provided by a semigroup $S$ with “coefficients” in $F_1$. Then $A$ is a monoid with zero element and if we also impose the condition that $S$ be commutative (or abelian), then $A$ is a commutative, pointed monoid. In this paper the term monoid will always mean commutative, pointed monoid unless otherwise stated.

The inclusion of a zero element in $F_1$, and hence all monoids, provides a more interesting theory of ideals since it allows for the existence of zero divisors. In any case, monoids have a rich theory of ideals including prime spectrums and their associated Zariski topology. Perhaps the most noticeable divergence from commutative ring theory is the lack of a Nakayama’s Lemma due to the non-cancellative nature of monoids (a monoid $A$ is cancellative when $ab = ac$ in $A$ means $b = c$). Although this lack of cancellation does not provide significant obstacles to the commutative algebra of monoids, we will see that it leads to a more problematic homological theory.

Prime ideals lead the way to a theory of monoid schemes which is discussed briefly in the last chapter whose content is drawn from [9]. There we provide a definition for the normalization of a special class of monoids. It is then shown that the normalization of such monoids need not be a monoid, but rather a monoid scheme. This is one more way in which the theory of monoids departs from the analogy with commutative rings and also shows the necessity for quickly moving into a study of the geometry of monoids.

When $k$ a field, the analog of a “module over a $k$-algebra” is obtained by forgetting
the additive structure of those modules. That is, a "module" over a monoid $A$ is a pointed set $X$ together with an action $A \times X \to X$. These objects, called $A$-sets, are the primary study of this paper. A morphism of $A$-sets is an $A$-equivariant, pointed set map and the category $A$-sets is both complete and cocomplete, though not abelian.

Perhaps the most significant feature of monoids, $A$-sets and their morphisms is that they do not admit a "First Isomorphism Theorem." That is, when $f : X \to Y$ is an $A$-set morphism, it is not true in general that $X/\ker(f) \cong \text{im}(f)$. For example, if $A = \mathbb{F}_1$, then $\mathbb{F}_1$-sets = Sets, the category of pointed sets where it is well known that the coproduct of two pointed sets $X, Y$ is the wedge sum $X \vee Y = (X \coprod Y)/(0_x \sim 0_y)$. The "fold" map $\mathbb{F}_1 \vee \mathbb{F}_1 \to \mathbb{F}_1$ defined by $1 \mapsto 1$ in both summands is surjective with trivial kernel. Spoken another way, we do not have that $\ker(f : X \to Y) = 0$ implies $f$ is injective (i.e., one-to-one). It is for this reason that the definition of a congruence, i.e. an equivalence relation that is also an $A$-set, plays a central role in the theory of monoids and $A$-sets.

Readers familiar with homological algebra for abelian categories are likely thinking that this failing of $A$-sets and their morphisms is bound to create many obstacles in a homological theory for $A$-sets. Moreover, any homological theory for $A$-sets must remain valid when $A = \mathbb{F}_1$ and $A$-sets = Sets. Hence we are drawn into a study of simplicial objects and homotopy groups which is well known to be computationally difficult.

It was the author's primary goal to investigate the possibility of a homological theory for $A$-sets that corresponds to the homotopy theory of simplicial $A$-sets in a manner analogous to the Dold-Kan Theorem for abelian categories. When $\mathcal{A}$ is an abelian category, the Dold-Kan Theorem defines an adjunction $K : \text{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A}) \rightleftarrows \Delta^{\text{op}}\mathcal{A} : N$, the latter category being that of simplicial objects in $\mathcal{A}$, that is an equivalence of categories. Furthermore, this equivalence descends to their homotopy categories $\text{Ho} \text{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A}) \cong \text{Ho} \Delta^{\text{op}}\mathcal{A}$ (a so-called Quillen equivalence). Recall that the homotopy category $\text{Ho} \mathcal{C}$ of a model category $\mathcal{C}$ is obtained from $\mathcal{C}$ by localizing at the weak equivalences. When $\mathcal{A} = R$-mod, the category of modules over a commutative ring, of primary homological interest is the derived category $\mathbf{D}(R)$ of $R$ which is the homotopy category $\text{Ho} \text{Ch}(R)$. 
This begs the question: what should be the derived category of a monoid $A$?

Aside from being markedly simpler to work with, the category $\text{Ch}(R)$ from which we obtain $\text{D}(R)$ can be thought of as an extension of $\Delta^{op} R\text{-mod} \cong \text{Ch}_{\geq 0}(A)$, and it is because of Dold-Kan that this extension is possible.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\Delta^{op} R\text{-mod} & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \text{Ch}_{\geq 0}(R) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{Ho} \Delta^{op} R\text{-mod} & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \text{D}_{\geq 0}(R)
\end{array}
\]

We are unable to produce an analogous diagram for $A$-sets since there is no candidate for the category of “complexes of $A$-sets” bounded below by 0, say $\text{Com}_{\geq 0}(A)$. Whatever $\text{Com}_{\geq 0}(A)$ might be, it is clear that it must have a model structure so that $\text{Ho} \text{Com}_{\geq 0}(A) \cong \text{Ho} \Delta^{op} A\text{-sets}$. The (projective) model structure on $\Delta^{op} R\text{-mod}$, hence $\text{Ch}_{\geq 0}(R)$, and $\Delta^{op} A\text{-sets}$ are both defined in terms of the model structure for the category $\Delta^{op} \text{Sets}$ of simplicial sets (see 3.4.5). In both cases, a map is a weak equivalence (resp., fibration, resp., cofibration) when it is so on the underlying simplicial set. It is reasonable to believe that one could use this same strategy to obtain the desired model structure on $\text{Com}_{\geq 0}(A)$. From this it is immediate that

i) the homology of a complex of $A$-sets will have, at least, the structure of a group,

ii) computing homology groups in $\text{Com}_{\geq 0}(A)$ will be difficult since, contrary to $\text{Ch}(R)$, not every complex of $A$-sets will be fibrant.

Looking at (ii) from a simplicial perspective, consider the following. Since $R$-modules have an underlying abelian group structure, every simplicial $R$-module is fibrant. Then the homotopy groups $\pi_\ast(M)$ of a simplicial $R$-module $M$ may be computed directly from $M$ and it is not surprising that these homotopy groups are themselves $R$-modules. The Dold-Kan correspondence then allows us to work with chain complexes, rather than simplicial objects.

On the other hand, $A$-sets do not even possess an internal binary operation and in general, $A$ is itself less than a group. Therefore, a general simplicial $A$-set is not fibrant and one is not be able to compute the homotopy groups $\pi_\ast(X)$ directly from a generic simplicial $A$-set $X$. One must first find a fibrant replacement $\tilde{X}$ for $X$ and find $\tilde{X}$ is likely to be most difficult part of computing the $\pi_\ast(X)$. Since $\text{Com}(A)_{\geq 0}$ will have a model
structure that mirrors $\Delta^{op}A$-sets, one will be forced to compute fibrant replacements in $\text{Com}(A)\geq 0$ as well. Of course, the necessity for fibrant objects stems from the fact that the invariants (homotopy classes of maps) provided by model categories are at least groups. Perhaps the future will bring a theory of “model categories” where the invariants computed for objects in a category $C$ reside within $C$ itself.

In Chapter 4 we define the category $\text{Da}(A)$ of double-arrow complexes of $A$-sets which the author believed to fill the role of chain complexes for a special class of non-abelian categories. Functors analogous to those used in the Dold-Kan correspondence are also defined in Chapter 4 (4.1.3, 4.2.6) and are shown to give an adjunction $K : \tilde{\text{Da}}_{\geq 0}(A) \simeq \Delta^{op}A$-sets : $N$. However, they do not provide an equivalence of categories. The author has not determined if the model structure on $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}$ translates to double-arrow complexes, though it seems reasonable. Therefore, it is unknown to the author if, after restricting to their respective categories of fibrant (or fibrant and cofibrant) objects, the functors $K, N$ provide a Quillen equivalence. Whatever the case may be, the author hopes the homological definitions and strategy of this paper serve as an example of how, or how not, to determine the derived category of a monoid.
Chapter 2

The commutative algebra of monoids

Here we investigate the algebraic properties of commutative, pointed monoids. There are many similarities between these monoids and commutative rings, hence, the outline of the theory follows suit. We provide many basic definitions and results which point out the difficulties which arise in objects having no (abelian) group structure. Included is the definition of short exact sequence for $A$-sets in Section 2.2.4.

There is much overlap between this chapter and [18]. A much more general theory of ideals can be found in [13].

2.1 Monoids and ideals

A monoid is a set $A$ together with a binary operation $\cdot : A \times A \rightarrow A$ satisfying $(a \cdot b) \cdot c = a \cdot (b \cdot c)$ (associativity) and an identity element $1_A \in A$ satisfying $a \cdot 1_A = 1_A \cdot a = a$ for all $a \in A$. We will generally drop the $\cdot$ and $1_A$ notation and write the operation using juxtaposition $ab$ and the identity as $1$. The monoid is commutative if we also have $ab = ba$ for every $a, b \in A$. A zero element, or basepoint, is a unique element $0 \in A$ satisfying $a0 = 0a = 0$ for every $a \in A$ and a monoid having a basepoint is pointed.

The basepoint will always be written $0$ or $*$ except perhaps in specific examples. Many sets have multiple monoid structures and the role of “0” may change. In cases when the monoid operation is not specified and the role of 0 may be unclear, we will explicitly state identity and basepoint elements. If necessary we denote a monoid by a ordered pair listing the set and operation.

Throughout this thesis, the term monoid will always mean a commutative, pointed monoid unless otherwise stated.
Example 2.1.1. If $G$ is any abelian group, we can form a monoid by adding a disjoint basepoint $G_+ = G \coprod \{\ast\}$. If $H_n = \{1, x, x^2, \ldots, x^n = 1\}$ is the cyclic group of order $n$, we let $C_n = H_n \cup \{0\}$ denote its associated pointed monoid. Notice that $C_1$ is the pointed trivial group and as noted in the introduction, it is also the “field with one element” $\mathbb{F}_1 = C_1$.

Example 2.1.2. After including a disjoint basepoint, the natural numbers $\mathbb{N}_+$ has additive monoid structure $\{-\infty, 0, 1, 2, \ldots\}$ and is the free monoid in one variable (see Section 2.2.2). Alternatively, we may consider the natural numbers $\{0, 1, 2, \ldots\}$ as a monoid using multiplication as the binary operation. This latter multiplicative monoid structure for $\mathbb{N}$ is of little interest so, for convenience, the notation $\mathbb{N}$ will always refer to the free monoid in one variable unless otherwise stated. The free monoid in one variable may also be written multiplicatively as $\{0, 1, x, x^2, \ldots\}$. Since multiplicative notation is preferable, we take the monoid $\mathbb{N}$ to be $\{0, 1, x, x^2, \ldots\}$.

Example 2.1.3. When $X$ is any set, possibly infinite, we define the free monoid on generators the elements of $X$ to be

$$\{0, 1, x_1^{k_1} \cdots x_n^{k_n} \mid x_i \in X \text{ for all } 1 \leq i \leq n, \ n > 0, k_i \geq 0\}.$$ 

The elements $x_1^{k_1} \cdots x_n^{k_n}$ are referred to as monomials or words.

Let $A$ be a monoid and $X \subseteq A$ a subset. Then $A$ is generated by $X$ if every non-zero $a \in A$ can be written $a = x_1^{m_1} \cdots x_n^{m_n}$ with $x_i \in X$ and $m_i \in \mathbb{N}$ for every $i$. In this case we write $A = \langle x \mid x \in X \rangle$ and we do not require $X$ to contain $0, 1$ since their presence in $A$ is implied. When $X$ can be chosen to be finite, $A$ is finitely generated. This definition for generators of a monoid coincides with that of groups.

Example 2.1.4. $(\mathbb{R}^n, +)$ is an unpointed monoid with identity element $0 = (0, \ldots, 0)$ containing $M = (\mathbb{Z}^n, +)$ as an unpointed submonoid. Given a finite set of vectors $v_1, \ldots, v_n$ of $M$, the $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$-linear span $\sigma = \{\sum r_i v_i \mid r_i \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}\}$ is a rational polyhedral cone when $\sigma$ contains no lines through the origin[8]. In this case, $S_\sigma = \sigma \cap M$ is a finitely generated, unpointed monoid, known as an affine semigroup. Associated to $S_\sigma$ is the monoid ring $R = \mathbb{C}[S_\sigma]$ which is the coordinate ring of the affine toric variety $\text{Spec}(R)$. 
Definition 2.1.5. Let $A, B$ be monoids. Their product is the usual cartesian product, i.e. $A \times B = \{(a, b) \mid a \in A, b \in B\}$ having identity $(1, 1)$ and basepoint $(0, 0)$. Their coproduct, also called the smash product, is $A \wedge B = (A \times B)/(A \times \{0\} \cup \{0\} \times B)$ which is analogous to the smash product of pointed topological spaces. Elements of the smash product are written $a \wedge b$ so that the identity element is $1 \wedge 1$ and the basepoint is $0 = 0 \wedge 0$.

2.1.1 Morphisms of monoids

Let $A, B$ be two monoids. A morphism $f : A \to B$ is function satisfying

\[ i) \ f(0) = 0 \quad ii) \ f(1) = 1 \quad iii) \ f(aa') = f(a)f(a') \]

Note that (i) and (ii) do not necessarily follow from (iii) as shown by the maps $A \to A \times A$ defined by $a \mapsto (a, 0)$ and $a \mapsto (a, 1)$. The image of a monoid $A$ under a monoid morphism $f$ is itself a monoid, called the image of $f$. Of course, the composition of two monoid morphisms is again a monoid morphism. In general the monoid adjective will be dropped and we call a morphism between monoids simply, a morphism. The category of (commutative, pointed) monoids together with their morphisms will be denoted $\text{Mon}_\ast$. The set of morphisms from $A$ to $B$ will be denoted $\text{Hom}_{\text{Mon}_\ast}(A, B)$ or simply $\text{Hom}(A, B)$ when there is no risk of confusion.

Example 2.1.6. There is a functor $U : \text{Rings} \to \text{Mon}_\ast$ from commutative rings with identity to monoids where $U(R)$ forgets the additive structure of $R$. Then $(U(R), \cdot)$ is a monoid with unit 1 and basepoint 0.

As usual, a monoid $B$ is a sub-monoid of $A$, written $B \subseteq A$, if there exists an injection $i : B \to A$. In this case, $B \cong i(B) \subseteq A$.

2.1.2 Ideals and quotients

When $A$ is a monoid, a subset $I \subseteq A$ is called an ideal if $ax \in I$ for any $a \in A$ and any $x \in I$. The ideal is proper if $I \neq A$ and this occurs only when $1 \notin I$. Let $I, J \subseteq A$ be ideals and define the product of $I$ and $J$ to be $IJ = \{ab \mid a \in I, b \in J\}$, which is
again an ideal. The intersection and union of a collection of ideals is again an ideal; the intersection of finitely many ideals contains their product.

An ideal $I \subseteq A$ is generated by a subset $Y \subseteq I$ if every $x \in I$ can be written $x = ay$ for some $a \in A$ and $y \in Y$. Here we write $I = A(y \mid y \in Y)$ or simply $I = (y \mid y \in Y)$ when there is no ambiguity. When $Y$ can be chosen finite the ideal is finitely generated. We will see in the next chapter that this definition is equivalent to $I$ being finitely generated as an $A$-set. If $I$ is generated by a single element, say $x \in I$, then $I$ is a principal ideal written using the above convention(s) or simply as $I = Ax$.

Let $f : A \to B$ be a monoid homomorphism and $J \subseteq B$ an ideal. Then the inverse image $f^{-1}(J)$ is always an ideal, called the contraction of $J$. On the other hand, if $I \subseteq A$ is an ideal, then the image $f(I)$ need not be. Here we define the extension of $I$ to be the ideal generated by the elements of $f(I)$.

An equivalence relation, $R$, on $A$ is a subset $R \subseteq A \times A$ satisfying:

i) $(a, a) \in R$ for all $a \in A$ (reflexive)

ii) $(a, b) \in R$ implies $(b, a) \in R$ (symmetric about the diagonal)

iii) $(a, b), (b, c) \in R$ implies $(a, c) \in R$ (transitive)

When it is convenient we use the symbol $\sim$ to denote the equivalence relation $R$ imposes on $A$ and denote an element $(a, b) \in R$ by $a \sim b$. This notation emphasizes the role of equivalence relations play in producing quotient monoids.

A congruence on $A$ is an equivalence relation $R \subseteq A \times A$ such that $(x, y) \in R \times R$ implies $(ax, ay) \in R \times R$. Given a congruence $R$ on $A$, define the equivalence class of $a \in A$ to be $[a] = \{ b \in A \mid a \sim b \}$. Multiplication of equivalence classes $[a][b] = [ab]$ is well defined since $a \sim c$ and $b \sim d$ means $ab \sim cb \sim cd$. The set of equivalence classes of $A$ with respect to $R$, denoted $A/R$ or $A/\sim$, forms a monoid under the multiplication just defined. There is a (monoid) morphism $\pi : A \to A/\sim$ that sends every element to its equivalence class, i.e. $\pi(a) = [a]$, called a quotient map. We will generally drop the $[a]$ notation and denote the equivalence classes in $A/\sim$ by $a$, or $\bar{a}$, with the understanding that the equivalence class is really what is meant. This should not cause confusion as long as it is made explicit to which monoid the element is considered as being contained in at any given time.
Let $A$ be a monoid and $Y = \{(a_1, b_1), \ldots \} \subseteq A \times A$ be any subset. The smallest congruence $X$ containing $Y$ is the congruence generated by $Y$ and the elements of $Y$ are the generators of $X$. When $Y$ is finite, we say that $X$ is finitely generated and write the quotient $A/X$ as $A/(a_1 = b_1, \ldots, a_n = b_n)$. We nearly always refer only to the generators of a congruence, with the understanding that the congruence is actually what is meant.

**Proposition 2.1.7.** Every monoid morphism $f : A \to B$ may be factored as the composition $A \xrightarrow{p} f(A) \xrightarrow{i} B$ where $p$ is a surjection and $i$ is an inclusion. Moreover, if $R$ is the congruence on $A$ generated by relations $a \sim b$ when $p(a) = p(b)$, then $A/R \cong f(A)$. In particular, there is a one-to-one correspondence between surjective morphisms $A \to B$ and congruences on $A$.

When $I \subseteq A$ is an ideal, the subset $I \times \{0\} \subseteq A \times A$ generates a congruence whose associated quotient monoid is written $A/I$ and identifies all elements of $I$ with $0$ leaving $A \setminus I$ untouched. In this case $\pi : A \to A/I$ has $\pi^{-1}(0) = I$ and $\pi^{-1}(a) = a$ for $0 \neq a \in A/I$. Whenever $A$ is an ideal the notation $A/I$ will always refer to the quotient of $A$ by the congruence generated by $I$. When $I = (x_1, \ldots, x_n)$ is finitely generated, we may write the quotient monoid as $A/(x_1, \ldots, x_n)$ which is shorthand for $A/(x_1 = 0, \ldots, x_n = 0)$.

**Remark 2.1.8.** This difference between a general congruence $R$ on a monoid $A$ and an ideal $I \subseteq A$ is not seen in commutative ring theory. Namely, the quotient $A/R$ is not necessarily obtained from $A$ by identifying an ideal with $0$. The notation for the quotient of a monoid by a congruence and ideal are written similarly for convenience, but it is important to remember the difference.

If $f : A \to B$ is a morphism, then $f^{-1}(0)$ is an ideal of $A$ called the kernel of $f$, written $\ker(f)$, and there is an induced morphism $\tilde{f} : A/\ker(f) \to B$ defined by $[a] \mapsto f(a)$. Since $\tilde{f}|_{A \setminus \ker(f)} = f$, we may write $f$ rather than $\tilde{f}$ when there will be no confusion.

We wish to stress it is not the case that a morphism $f : A \to B$ is injective when the ideal $\ker(f) = 0$. For example, let $C_n$ be the pointed abelian group of order $n$ and
consider $f : \mathbb{N} \to C_n$ defined by $f(x) = x$. Then $f(x^k) = f(x^{k+n})$ for every $k \in \mathbb{N}$ but $\ker(f) = f^{-1}(0) = 0$. This example showcases the lack of a “First Isomorphism Theorem” for monoids, i.e. we do not have $A/\ker(f) \cong \im(f)$.

**Remark 2.1.9.** We previously noted that $\langle x \rangle \cong \mathbb{N}$ and that we consider $\langle x \rangle$ a multiplicative notation for $(\mathbb{N},+)$. We use the notation $\mathbb{N}_m$ for the quotient monoid $\mathbb{N}/(m) \cong \langle x \rangle/(x^m)$ having elements $\{0, 1, x, \ldots, x^{m-1}\}$, not to be confused with $C_m \cong \langle x \rangle/(x^m \sim 1)$ the pointed finite group.

Given ideals $I, J \subseteq A$, one can form the *ideal quotient* $(J :_A I) = \{a \in A \mid ab \in J \text{ for every } b \in I\}$ or $(J : I)$ if there is no chance for confusion. If $I = (b)$ is principal we simply write $(J : b)$. When $J = 0$, the ideal quotient $(0 : I) = \{a \in A \mid ax = 0 \text{ for all } x \in I\}$ is the *annihilator* of $I$, denoted $\ann_A(I)$ or simply $\ann(I)$. If $I = (b)$ and $\ann(b) \neq 0$, $b$ is a *zero divisor* or *torsion* element. When $\ann(b) = 0$ for every nonzero $b \in A$, $A$ is *torsion free*. A much stronger condition requires that $ab = ac$ implies $b = c$ for all $a, b, c \in A$ with $a \neq 0$. Monoids satisfying this condition are *cancellative* and consequently torsion free. A monoid isomorphic to the quotient of a cancellative monoid by an ideal is *partially cancellative* or *pc*.

### 2.1.3 Prime ideals and units

An element $u \in A$ is a *unit* if there exists $u^{-1} \in A$ with $uu^{-1} = 1$; equivalently $u$ is not contained in any proper ideal of $A$. The set of units, $A^\times$, of $A$ form an abelian group and is the largest multiplicatively closed subset disjoint from every proper ideal. The complement of $A^\times$ is an ideal; it is the unique maximal ideal of $A$, and is written $\mathfrak{m}_A$ or simply $\mathfrak{m}$.

An ideal $\mathfrak{p}$ is *prime* if $\mathfrak{p} \neq A$ and it satisfies one of the following three equivalent conditions:

i) $ab \in \mathfrak{p}$ means $a \in \mathfrak{p}$ or $b \in \mathfrak{p}$,

ii) $a \notin \mathfrak{p}$ and $b \notin \mathfrak{p}$ means $ab \notin \mathfrak{p}$,

iii) $A/\mathfrak{p}$ is torsion free.

The set of all prime ideals of a monoid $A$ is written $\text{MSpec}(A)$. The union of prime
ideals is prime, though the intersection and product are not. For convenience and tradition, we do not allow $A$ to be a prime ideal so that prime ideals are always proper. Condition (ii) implies that $A \setminus p$ is a multiplicatively closed subset of $A$ containing $A^\times$, namely $A \setminus p \cup \{0\} \subseteq A$ is a submonoid. Every proper ideal is disjoint from $A^\times$ so that the prime $m = A \setminus A^\times$ is the unique maximal ideal of $A$; then $A/m \cong A^\times$ is a pointed abelian group. In commutative ring theory a ring is local when it has only a single maximal ideal. Using this vocabulary we have that every monoid is local. This is one way in which the structure of monoids is simpler than that of rings. However, with no Nakayama’s Lemma (see Remark 2.2.12) available, monoids have their own complexities.

**Proposition 2.1.10.** If $A$ is a finitely generated monoid, then $A$ has finitely many prime ideals.

**Proof.** Let $X = \{a_1, \ldots, a_n\}$ be a set of generators for $A$ and $p \subseteq A$ a nonzero prime ideal. If $a \in p$ is nonzero, then $a = u \cdot \prod_{1 \leq i \leq n} a_i^{k_i}$ with $k_i \geq 0$ and $u$ a unit. By definition of primality, $p$ must contain at least one of the $a_i$ having $k_i > 0$. More generally, $X \cap p$ generates $p$ since every element of $A$ can be written as a product of elements of $X$.

**Remark 2.1.11.** Proposition 2.1.10 provides an upper bound on the cardinality of $\text{MSpec}(A)$ when $A$ is a finitely generated monoid. That is, if $A$ is generated by $n$ elements, $\text{MSpec}(A)$ has at most $2^n$ primes. The upper bound is attained when $(0)$ is prime and every generator of $A$ generates a (principal) prime ideal.

The intersection of every prime ideal of $A$ is an ideal called the nilradical and denoted $\text{nil}(A)$. Every element of $\text{nil}(A)$ is nilpotent, i.e. $a^n = 0$ for some $n \geq 1$; conversely every nilpotent element is contained in the nilradical. We say that $A$ is reduced if whenever $a, b \in A$ satisfy $a^2 = b^2$ and $a^3 = b^3$ then $a = b$. This implies that $A$ has no nilpotent elements, i.e., that $\text{nil}(A) = \{a \in A : a^n = 0 \text{ for some } n\}$ vanishes. When $A$ is a pc monoid (see after Remark 2.1.9), it is reduced if and only if $\text{nil}(A) = 0$; in this case $A_{\text{red}} = A/\text{nil}(A)$ is a reduced monoid. Note that the equivalence of these two conditions does not hold in general, for example $A = \langle 0, 1, x, y \mid x^2 = y^2, x^3 = y^3 \rangle$ is not reduced yet $\text{nil}(A) = 0$. 


A proper ideal \( q \subseteq A \) is primary when \( xy \in q \) implies \( x \in q \) or \( y^n \in q \). Alternatively, \( q \) is primary when every zero-divisor \( a \in A/q \) is nilpotent. The radical of an ideal \( I \) is \( \sqrt{I} = \{ a \in A \mid a^n \in I \} \); it is a prime ideal when \( I \) is primary. It is easy see the radical of a primary ideal \( q \) is prime, say \( p \), and when convenient we say that \( q \) is \( p \)-primary.

Here are a couple of basic results, whose proofs exactly mimic those of ring theory, that we will require later:

**Lemma 2.1.12.** Let \( p \) be prime ideal in a monoid \( A \).

i) If \( I_1, \ldots, I_n \) are ideals such that \( \cap_i I_i \subseteq p \), then \( I_i \subseteq p \) for some \( i \). If in addition \( p = \cap_i I_i \), then \( p = I_i \) for some \( i \).

ii) Let \( q \) be a \( p \)-primary ideal of \( A \). If \( a \in A \setminus q \), then \((q : a)\) is \( p \)-primary.

When \( A \) is a monoid, \( \text{MSpec}(A) \) is a topological space using the Zariski Topology. This is not to be confused with the maximal ideal spectrum \( \text{m-Spec}(R) = \{m \in \text{Spec}(R) \mid m \text{ maximal} \} \), where \( R \) is a commutative ring. For any set \( S \subseteq A \), the Zariski closed set containing \( S \) is \( V(S) = \{p \in \text{MSpec}(A) \mid p \supseteq S \} \). The proof that this forms a topology is exactly the same as for rings.

We call a strictly increasing sequence of prime ideals \( p_0 \subset p_1 \subset \cdots \) a chain. When the sequence is finite, say \( p_n \) is the final prime, we say the chain has length \( n \). The (Krull) dimension of a monoid \( A \) is the supremum of the lengths of all chains of prime ideals in \( A \); this may be infinite. Proposition 2.1.10 shows that all finitely generated monoids have finite dimension. The height or codimension of a prime \( p \) is the supremum of the lengths of all chains of prime ideals contained in \( p \); equivalently the dimension of the localization \( A_p \) of \( A \) at \( p \) (see Section 2.4).

### 2.2 \( A \)-sets

Let \( A \) be a monoid and \( X \) a pointed set, i.e. \( X \) has distinguished basepoint denoted \( 0_X \). A left \( A \)-action on \( X \) is a binary operation \( \cdot : A \times X \to X \) satisfying:

i) \( 1 \cdot x = x \)

ii) \( 0_A \cdot x = 0_X \) and \( a \cdot 0_X = 0_X \)

iii) \((ab) \cdot x = a \cdot (b \cdot x)\) for every \( a, b \in A, x \in X \) (associativity)
A left $A$-set is a pointed set $X$ together with a left $A$-action. One may define a right $A$-set in the obvious way. If $B$ is another monoid, a two-sided $A,B$-set is a pointed set $X$ that is both a left $A$-set and a right $B$-set with actions satisfying $(ax)b = a(xb)$ for all $x \in X$, $a \in A$ and $b \in B$. When $A = B$, hence $X$ has both a left and right $A$-action, $X$ is an (non-commutative) $A$-biset. The action of an $A$-biset commutes when $a \cdot x = x \cdot a$ for all $a \in A$ and $x \in X$; then $A$-bisets with a commutative $A$-action are commutative. As usual, we will drop the $\cdot$ notation and denote the action of $A$ on $X$ by juxtaposition $ax$. An $A$-set is a commutative $A$-biset and these objects are our primary concern.

The term $A$-set is fairly conventional, though the terms $A$-module, $A$-system and $A$-polygon are also found in the literature. We avoid the former since most objects referred to as “modules” have the structure of an abelian group and we want to avoid this confusion. The latter two are used mainly in semigroup theory and we find the term “set” more suitable (and expedient!).

**Example 2.2.1.** i) If $I$ is any ideal of $A$, then $I$ and $A/I$ are both $A$-sets.

ii) Let $R$ be a commutative ring. The forgetful functor $U : \text{Rings} \to \text{Mon}$, from Example 2.1.6 induces the forgetful functor $U : \text{R-mod} \to U(R)$-sets. To every $R$-module $M$, the $U(R)$-set $U(M)$ has no addition and retains its $R$-action.

**Definition 2.2.2.** Let $X,Y$ be $A$-sets. The coproduct of $X$ and $Y$, called the **wedge product** is $X \lor Y = (X \coprod Y)/(0_X \sim 0_Y)$. A nonzero element of $Z = X \lor Y$ is simply an element $x \in X$ or $y \in Y$, but not both. (There is no nonzero “addition” here!) The product of $A$-sets is the usual cartesian product.

**Example 2.2.3.** Let $G$ be a (abelian) group, $G_+$ the associated monoid and $X$ a $G_+$-set. The structure of $X$ is well understood. Since $X\setminus\{0\}$ is a $G$-set, it is the disjoint union of orbits each of which is isomorphic to $G/H$ for some subgroup $H$. Thus we have $X = \bigsqcup_{i=0}^{n}(G/H_i)_+$ as a $G_+$-set.

Let $S \subseteq X$ a subset. We say $X$ is generated by $S$ if every $x \in X$ can be written $x = az$ for some $a \in A$ and $z \in S$. In this case we may write $X = A(z \mid z \in S)$ or when $S = \{z\}$ contains only a single element, $X = Az$. When $S$ can be chosen finite, we say that $X$ is finitely generated.
2.2.1 Morphisms of $A$-sets

Let $A$ be a monoid and $X, Y$ be $A$-sets. A function $f : X \to Y$ is an $A$-set morphism, or simply homomorphism, when it satisfies:

i) $f(0_X) = 0_Y$ (based)

ii) $f(ax) = af(x)$ for every $a \in A$, $x \in X$ ($A$-equivariant)

The category of $A$-sets together with their $A$-set morphisms will be denoted $A$-sets and the set of morphisms from $X$ to $Y$ by $\text{Hom}_A(X, Y)$ or simply $\text{Hom}(X, Y)$ when there is no risk of confusion. Note that $\text{Hom}(X, Y)$ is itself an $A$-set with basepoint the trivial map, $x \mapsto 0$, and $A$-action $(af)(x) = f(ax)$. This makes $\text{Hom}_A(-, -) : A$-sets$^{op} \times A$-sets $\to A$-sets a bi-functor; it will be discussed further in Section 3.2.

Two $A$-sets $X, Y$ are isomorphic when there is a bijective morphism $f : X \to Y$ (equivalently, $f$ has an inverse).

**Remark 2.2.4.** Let $f : X \to Y$ be an $A$-set morphism. We use the notation $f_* = \text{Hom}(Z, f) : \text{Hom}(Z, X) \to \text{Hom}(Z, Y)$ so that $f_*(\alpha) = f\alpha$ when $\alpha \in \text{Hom}(Z, X)$. Likewise, we use the notation $f^* = \text{Hom}(f, Z) : \text{Hom}(X, Z) \to \text{Hom}(Y, Z)$ so that $f^*(\beta) = \beta f$ for every $\beta \in \text{Hom}(X, Z)$. Even though this notation conflicts with that of extension and contraction of scalars (see Section 2.3), this should cause no confusion as the intent should be clear from the context.

**Remark 2.2.5.** Let $f : X' \lor X'' \to Y$ be an $A$-set morphism. It will be convenient to write $f = f' \lor f''$ where $f' = f|_{X'}$ and $f'' = f|_{X''}$ even though both morphisms will never be “used simultaneously.” That is, an element of $X' \lor X''$ is an element $x' \in X'$ or $x'' \in X''$ so that

$$f(x) = (f' \lor f'')(x) = \begin{cases} f'(x) & \text{if } x \in X', \\ f''(x) & \text{if } x \in X'' \end{cases}$$

makes sense. This notation works well with the usual meaning of $\lor$ as the logical or operand since we will only ever use $f'$ or $f''$ (but not both, so in our case it should be exclusive).
Conversely, given two $A$-set morphisms $f : X \to Y$ and $f' : X' \to Y'$, we define the map $f \lor f' : X \lor X' \to Y \lor Y'$ by $(f \lor f')|_X = f$ and $(f \lor f')|_{X'} = f'$.

### 2.2.2 Free $A$-sets

A pair of important adjoint functors are the forgetful, or underlying pointed set, functor $U : A\text{-sets} \to \text{Sets}_*$ and the free functor $F : \text{Sets}_* \to A\text{-sets}$ defined by $F(X) = \bigvee_{0 \neq x \in X} A$. The bijection $\text{Hom}_A(FX,Y) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(X,UY)$ is achieved in the usual way: every $A$-set map $f : FX \to Y$ is determined by its generators (the elements of $X$). Alternatively, a pointed simplicial set is an $F_1$-set and the inclusion $\iota : F_1 \to A$ induces the adjunction

$$
\begin{align*}
F_1\text{-sets} & \rightleftarrows A\text{-sets} \\
\iota_* & \cong \iota^*
\end{align*}
$$

where $F = \iota_*$, $U = \iota^*$ are the extension and contraction of scalars respectively (see Example 2.3.4). It should be clear that both $\iota_*$ and $\iota^*$ are exact functors.

**Example 2.2.6.** We will use a notation for found in group theory which emphasizes that $A$ is acting on the left. Let $X$ be a pointed set and define $A[X] = \bigvee_{x \in X} A$. Then write $[x]$ for the element $1$ in the component indexed by $x$, and set $[0] = 0$. Thus every nonzero element of $A[X]$ has the form $a[x]$ for a unique $a \in A$ and $x \in X$.

(Warning) To avoid cumbersome notation, when $X$ is an $A$-set, we define $A[X]$ to be the free $A$-set $FU(X)$, equivalently $A[U(X)]/A[\{0\}]$. This avoids the notation $A[U(X)]\setminus\{0\}$.

### 2.2.3 $A$-subsets and quotients

We say that $Y$ is an $A$-subset of $X$, denoted $Y \subseteq X$, when $Y$ is a subset such that $ay \in Y$ for every $a \in A$, $y \in Y$. In line with monoids (see Section 2.1.2), a congruence is an equivalence relation $R \subseteq X \times X$ that is also an $A$-subset, namely $(x, x') \in R$ implies $(ax, ax') \in R$. For an arbitrary congruence we use the notation $X/R$ to denote the quotient $A$-set in which $x = x'$ when $(x, x') \in R$. In general we may write elements of $R$ as $x \sim x'$ to emphasize these elements are identified in the quotient. When $R \subseteq X \times X$ is any subset, we call the smallest congruence $R'$ containing $R$ to be the congruence
generated by $R$ and the elements of $R$ the generators of $R'$. When $R$ is finite, $R'$ is finitely generated.

If $Y \subseteq X$ is an $A$-subset, then $Y \times \{0\} \subseteq X \times X$ generates a congruence whose quotient $A$-set, denoted $X/Y$, identifies every element of $Y$ with 0 and fixes $X \setminus Y$. When $Y \subseteq X$, the notation $X/Y$ will always refer to the quotient of $X$ by the congruence generated by $Y$. For general congruences we adopt the conventions of monoids. Namely, when the congruence $R \subseteq X \times X$ is generated by $\{(x_1, x'_1), \ldots\}$, we may write the quotient $A$-set $X/R$ as $X/(x_1 = x'_1, \ldots)$. When the set of generators $\{(x_i, x'_i)\}$ of $R$ can be chosen to be finite, $R$ is finitely generated.

**Proposition 2.2.7.** Every $A$-set morphism $f : X \to Y$ can be factored as $X \xrightarrow{p} f(X) \xrightarrow{i} Y$ where $p$ is a surjection and $i$ is an injection. Moreover, if $R$ is the congruence on $X$ generated by relations $x = x'$ when $p(x) = p(x')$, then $X/R \cong f(X)$. In particular, there is a one-to-one correspondence between surjective morphisms $X \to Y$ and congruences on $X$.

As with monoids, we can also define the smash product of $A$-sets $X$ and $Y$ as the quotient

$$X \wedge Y = (X \times Y)/(\{(X \times \{0\}) \cup (\{0\} \times Y)\})$$

which is the $A$-set consisting of 0 and all ordered pairs $(x, y)$ with $x, y \neq 0$. We write the elements of $X \wedge Y$ as $x \wedge y$. The $A$-action of $X \wedge Y$ is inherited from from $X \times Y$ so $a(x \wedge y) = ax \wedge ay$.

**Remark 2.2.8.** As with Remark 2.1.8, not every congruence on an $A$-set $X$ is realized as an $A$-subset. Every $A$-subset generates a congruence but not every congruence corresponds to an $A$-subset of $X$. The notation for $A$-subsets and congruences on $X$ are similar for convenience, but it is important to remember this difference.

For a morphism $f : X \to Y$, the kernel and cokernel are defined by the usual categorical notions. The kernel, denoted $\ker(f)$, is the pullback in the diagram on the
left and the cokernel, denoted \( \text{coker}(f) \) is the pushout of the diagram on the right.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 \times_Y X & \longrightarrow & X \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow f \\
0 & \longrightarrow & Y
\end{array}
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \longrightarrow & Y \\
f & & \downarrow \\
0 & \longrightarrow & 0 \vee_X Y
\end{array}
\]

All kernels and cokernels exist in \( A\)-sets but \textbf{we do not} have that \( f \) is injective when \( \ker(f) = 0 \), and \textbf{we do not} have in general the isomorphism \( X/\ker(f) \cong Y \).

\textbf{Example 2.2.9.} Let \( A \) be any monoid and consider the \( A\)-set morphism \( A \vee A \to A \) which restricts to the identity map on each summand. This map is obviously surjective and the kernel is 0, however the fiber of any element contains two points. This simple example of the “misbehavior” of \( A\)-set morphisms showcases the primary obstacle in constructing a homological theory.

\textbf{Remark 2.2.10.} In \( A\)-sets every monomorphism is the kernel of its cokernel, but \textit{not} every epimorphism is the cokernel of its kernel or any other morphism. Due to the latter fact we can no longer conclude that a morphism is a monomorphism when its kernel is trivial. However, we still have the fact that the kernel of a monomorphism is trivial.

\textit{Throughout the remainder of this thesis the terms injective, monomorphism and one-to-one will all mean for a morphism \( f : X \to Y \), that \( f(x) = f(x') \) implies \( x = x' \).}

An interesting property of \( A\)-set morphisms, similar to that of continuous functions and connected components of topological spaces, is the following.

\textbf{Proposition 2.2.11.} Let \( f : X \to \bigvee_{i \in I} Y_i \) be an \( A\)-set morphism and \( X_i = f^{-1}(Y_i) \). Then \( X = \bigcup_{i \in I} X_i \) and \( X_i \cap X_j \subseteq \ker(f) \) for all \( i, j \). In particular, \( \ker(f) = 0 \) means \( X = \bigvee_{i \in I} X_i \).

\textbf{Proof.} If \( f(x) \in Y_i \) for some \( i \in I \), then \( f(ax) = af(x) \in Y_i \) since \( Y_i \) is an \( A\)-set. Hence, each \( X_i \subseteq X \) is itself an \( A\)-set and \( f(X_i \cap X_j) \subseteq Y_i \cap Y_j = 0 \) when \( i \neq j \).

Of course when \( x \in \ker(f) \), we have \( x \in f^{-1}(0) \subseteq X_i \) for all \( i \) hence \( x \in X_i \cap X_j \) for all \( i, j \). \( \square \)
Let $X$ be an $A$-set and $X' \subseteq X$ any $A$-subset. Define the annihilator of $X'$, denoted $\text{ann}_A(X')$ or simply $\text{ann}(X')$, to be the ideal $(0 :_A X') = \{a \in A \mid ax = 0 \text{ for every } x \in X'\}$. A general $A$-set $X$ is faithful when $\text{ann}(X) = 0$. When $\text{ann}(X) \neq 0$, then $X$ is a faithful $A/\text{ann}(X)$-set. For an ideal $I \subseteq A$ and an $A$-set $X$, the set $IX = \{ax \mid a \in I, x \in X\} \subseteq X$ is an $A$-subset and we can form the quotient $X/IX$. In this case $I \subseteq \text{ann}(X/IX)$ so that $X/IX$ is an $A/I$-set.

Let $X$ be a noetherian $A$-set. The set of ideals $\{\text{ann}(x) \mid x \in X\}$ forms a partially ordered set under containment and the maximal elements, whose existence is given by the ACC (see Section 2.5), are prime. To see that maximal elements are prime, suppose $ab \in \text{ann}(x)$ and $b \notin \text{ann}(x)$. Then $a \in \text{ann}(bx)$ and since $\text{ann}(x) \subseteq \text{ann}(bx)$, if $\text{ann}(x)$ were maximal, we must have $\text{ann}(bx) = \text{ann}(x)$ hence, $a \in \text{ann}(x)$. Primes occurring in this way are called the associated primes of $X$ and the collection of all such primes is denoted $\text{Ass}_A(X)$ or simply $\text{Ass}(A)$ when there is no chance for confusion. That is, a prime ideal $p \subseteq A$ is an associated prime of $X$ when $p = (0 :_A x)$ for some $x \in X$. Then $ax = 0$ in $X$ if and only if $a \in (0 :_A x) \subseteq p$ for some $p \in \text{Ass}(X)$ so that $D = \cup_{p \in \text{Ass}(X)} p = \{\text{zero divisors of } X\}$. When $X' \subseteq X$ is an $A$-subset, we say the primes $\text{Ass}(X/X')$ are associated or belong to $X'$. The usual results regarding associated primes in ring theory carry through with monoids. This will be covered in more detail in Section 2.6.

**Remark 2.2.12.** There is no Nakayama’s Lemma for general monoids. Since all monoids are local, such a statement would read: If $I \subseteq A$ is a proper ideal and $X$ an $A$-set, then $IX = X$ means $X = 0$. This is far from the truth. For example, consider the quotient $A = \langle x \rangle/(x^n = x)$ of the free monoid in one variable. Here $m = \{0, x, \ldots, x^{n-1}\}$ and $m^k \cdot m = m$ for every $k \geq 0$.

### 2.2.4 Admissible exact sequences

In previous sections we have seen a big difference between the morphisms in $A$-sets and those of abelian categories. We expand upon this further now. The power of a homological theory stems from the ability to produce properties of morphisms from the (non-)existence of kernels. To remedy the situation, we simply restrict our attention to
morphisms $f$ which satisfy: $\text{ker}(f) = 0$ if and only if $f$ is one-to-one.

We will see in Chapter 3 that considering only these morphisms will not be sufficient. In particular, using such morphisms will not allow every $A$-set to have a projective resolution. For now, we recall that a morphism $f : X \to Y$ is one-to-one, injective or a monomorphism when $f(x) = f(x')$ implies $x = x'$ for all $x, x' \in X$. Also, $\text{ker}(f) = 0$ does not imply $f$ is injective.

**Definition 2.2.13.** A morphism $f : X \to Y$ is admissible when the surjection $f : X \to f(X)$ is a cokernel. In this case, $\text{ker}(f) = 0$ implies $f$ is injective.

All injections $X \hookrightarrow Y$ are clearly admissible since they are the cokernel of the zero map $0 \to X$. For a general morphism $f : X \to Y$, whenever $f(x) = f(x') \neq 0$ for some $x, x' \in X$, $X/\text{ker}(f) \not\cong f(X)$ since $\overline{x} \neq \overline{x'}$ in $X/\text{ker}(f)$; hence $f$ cannot be admissible. We can then say the following:

i) $f : X \to Y$ is admissible if and only if $f|_{X \setminus \text{ker}(f)}$ is a (set-theoretic) injection.

ii) An admissible morphism is an injection if and only if it has trivial kernel.

iii) Admissible morphisms have a “First Isomorphism Theorem,” namely, $X/\text{ker}(f) \cong \text{im}(f)$.

A sequence

$$\cdots \to X_{n+1} \xrightarrow{f_{n+1}} X_n \xrightarrow{f_n} X_{n-1} \to \cdots$$

a morphisms is admissible when every morphism in the sequence is admissible. The admissible sequence is exact when $\text{im}(f_{i+1}) = \text{ker}(f_i)$ for all $i$. An admissible short exact sequence, or a.s.e.s., is an admissible exact sequence of the form

$$0 \to X' \xrightarrow{g} X \xrightarrow{f} X'' \to 0.$$  

In general we will refer to an admissible exact sequences simply as an a.e.s. and reserve a.s.e.s. for situations when we wish to stress the a.e.s. is short.

An a.e.s. $0 \to X' \xrightarrow{g} X \xrightarrow{f} X'' \to 0$ is called an extension of $X''$ by $X'$. We define and study the isomorphism classes of extensions of $X''$ by $X'$ in Section 4.4, but we provide a little intuition to the structure of such sequences now.

With notation as above, admissible short exact sequences have the following familiar properties:
i) $g$ is one-to-one since $\ker(g) = \im(0 \to X')$.

ii) $\im(g) = \ker(f)$

iii) $f$ is surjective since $\im(f) = \ker(X'' \to 0)$

We now look more closely at the structure of short exact sequences.

**Lemma 2.2.14.** (Splitting) The a.e.s. of $A$-sets $0 \to X \xrightarrow{g} Y \xrightarrow{f} Z \to 0$ splits, i.e. $Y \cong X \vee Z$, if and only if:

i) There is an $A$-set morphism $\sigma : Z \to Y$ with $f \sigma = \id_Z$ or

ii) There is an admissible $A$-set morphism $\psi : Y \to X$ with $\psi g = \id_Y$.

We refer to the morphisms $\varphi$ and $\psi$ as splitting maps.

**Proof.** We first note that when the sequence splits, the existence of $\sigma$ (resp. $\psi$) defined in (i) (resp. (ii)) is obvious.

Conversely, suppose that (i) holds. Let $\sigma : Z \to Y$ be an $A$-set morphism satisfying $f \sigma = \id_Z$. Since $f$ is admissible, $y \notin \ker(f)$ implies $y \in \im(\sigma)$. Hence, $Y = \ker(f) \cup \im(\sigma)$. Moreover, $\ker(f)$ and $\im(\sigma)$ are $A$-subsets of $Y$ and $\ker(f) \cap \im(\sigma) = 0$ since $\sigma$ is a section of $f$. Thus, $Y = \ker(f) \vee \im(\sigma) \cong X \vee Z$.

Now, assume (ii) and write $W$ for $\ker(\psi)$. Then $0 \to W \xrightarrow{i} Y \xrightarrow{\psi} X \to 0$ is an a.e.s. with $\psi i = \id_W$. By (i), $Y \cong X \vee W$ and hence the bijection $W \to Z$ is an isomorphism of $A$-sets.

**Example 2.2.15.** Let $A = \langle x \rangle$ be the free monoid in one variable, $x$. Fix $n > 1$ and consider the $A$-set $Y = (A \vee A')/(x^n = x'^n)$ where the ’ notation is used to distinguish the summands of $Y$. There is an a.e.s. $0 \to A \xrightarrow{i} Y \to A/x^n A \to 0$, where $i(1) = 1'$, and a function $\psi : Y \to A$ defined by $\psi(1) = \psi(1') = 1$ such that $\psi \circ i = \id$. However, $Y \not\cong A \vee A/(x^n)$ so that $\psi$ is not a splitting map. This shows the admissible condition in Lemma 2.2.14(ii) is necessary.

In any a.e.s. $0 \to X' \to X \to X'' \to 0$, there is a unique, pointed set map $\sigma : X'' \to X$ giving a decomposition $X \cong X' \vee X''$ as pointed sets. The $A$-set structure of the $A$-subset $X'$ is completely determined. The isomorphism $X'' \cong X/X'$ determines the action of $A$ on all non-zero divisors in $\sigma(X'')$. When $ax'' = 0$ in $X''$, the isomorphism
only enforces that $a\sigma(x'')$ is in the $X'$ summand (as pointed sets) of $X$. Therefore, to define an $A$-set structure on $X$ leaving $X', X''$ fixed, the only freedom available is to assign to every pair $(a, x'')$ with $ax'' = 0$ in $X''$, an element $x' \in X'$ in such a way that we obtain a valid $A$-set structure on $X$.

2.3 Tensor products

Though $A$-sets lack an abelian group structure, the tensor product of $A$-sets is still an important categorical construction. Its structure is much simpler than its counterpart in commutative ring theory. Also, its role as a universal object is decreased in the absence of bilinear mappings, however, by removing the additive relations of bilinear mappings, we may still define the tensor product in this way.

Let $X, Y, Z$ be $A$-sets and $f : X \times Y \to Z$ a function. We say that $f$ is a bi-equivariant $A$-set map when $f(ax, y) = af(x, y)$ and $f(x, ay) = af(x, y)$ for all $a \in A$ and $(x, y) \in X \times Y$. That is, $f$ is $A$-equivariant in both coordinates.

**Definition 2.3.1.** The tensor product of $X$ and $Y$ is an $A$-set $T$ satisfying the following universal property for bi-equivariant maps $f$:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X \times Y & \longrightarrow & T \\
\downarrow f & \quad & \downarrow \exists g \\
\downarrow & \quad & \downarrow \\
& Z & \\
\end{array}
\]

As in ring theory, we may construct the tensor product in the following way. Consider the free $A$-set (see Section 2.2.2) $A[X \times Y]$ having generators the nonzero elements $(x, y)$ of $X \times Y$. Let $R$ be the congruence on $A[X \times Y]$ generated by all relations of the form

$$[ax, y] \sim a[x, y] \quad \text{and} \quad [x, ay] \sim a[x, y].$$

Then $T = A[X \times Y]/R$. We write $X \otimes_A Y$ for the tensor product $T$, or simply $X \otimes Y$ when there is no risk of confusion, and $x \otimes y$ for its elements.

**Remark 2.3.2.** Elements of the form $x \otimes 0$ and $0 \otimes y$ are equivalent to 0 in $X \otimes_A Y$. In the construction for $X \otimes_A Y$ we can replace $A[X \times Y]$ with $A[X \wedge Y]$ where $X \wedge Y$ is the smash product (see Section 2.2.3). It is not true in general that $X \otimes_A Y$ is the
A-set $X \wedge Y$ modulo relations of the form $a(x, y) \sim (ax, y)$ and $a(x, y) \sim (x, ay)$. The
$A$-action on $X \wedge Y$ is coordinate-wise, since it is a quotient of $X \times Y$, and the relations
would imply $a(x, y) = (ax, ay) = a^2(x, y)$ for every $a \in A$. In other words, $X \wedge Y$
modulo the aforementioned relations is isomorphic to $X \otimes_A Y$ only when every element
of $A$ is idempotent.

**Proposition 2.3.3.** Let $X, Y, Z$ be $A$-sets. Then we have the following:

i) $X \otimes Y \cong Y \otimes X$

ii) $(X \otimes Y) \otimes Z \cong X \otimes (Y \otimes Z)$

iii) $(X \vee Y) \otimes Z \cong (X \otimes Z) \vee (Y \otimes Z)$

iv) $(X/Y) \otimes Z \cong (X \otimes Z)/(Y \otimes Z)$

Moreover, $- \otimes_A Y$ is a functor and a left adjoint via the adjunction $\text{Hom}_A(X \otimes_A Y, Z) \cong$
$\text{Hom}_A(X, \text{Hom}_A(Y, Z))$. Hence $- \otimes_A Y$ preserves colimits (see [23]) from which (iv) is
a special case.

If $f : A \to B$ is a monoid morphism and $X$ an $B$-set, then $X$ is naturally an $A$-set
with $A$-action $ax := f(a)x$. This gives a functor $f^* : B\text{-sets} \to A\text{-sets}$, called the
*restriction of scalars from $B$ to $A$*. In particular, $B$ is an $A$-set and when $Y$ is any
other $A$-set, $B \otimes_A Y$ is a $B$-set with action $b(b' \otimes y) = bb' \otimes y$. This provides a functor
$f_* : A\text{-sets} \to B\text{-sets}$ called the *extension of scalars from $A$ to $B$* with $f_* Y = B \otimes_A Y$.

**Example 2.3.4.** Any pointed set is an $F_1$-set. If $X, Y$ are $F_1$-sets, then $X \otimes_{F_1} Y \cong X \wedge Y$
is their smash product. When $A$ is a monoid, there is always a morphism $\iota : F_1 \to A$
and when $X$ is an $A$-set, $\iota^* X$ is its underlying pointed set (removing the $A$-action).
Note that $\iota^* \iota_* X = A \otimes_{F_1} X = A[X]$ is a free $A$-set which is isomorphic to $A \wedge X$ as
*pointed sets*, but not as $A$-sets due to the action $a(b \wedge x) = ab \wedge ax$ on $A \wedge X$.

### 2.3.1 Tensor product of monoids

Let $C$ be a monoid. Define a $C$-monoid or *monoid over $C$* to be a monoid morphism
$f : C \to A$. Given another $C$-monoid, $g : C \to B$, one can form the *smash product*, or
tensor product, of $A$ and $B$ over $C$ as the pushout of the following diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
C \xrightarrow{f} A \\
\downarrow g \\
B \xrightarrow{\delta} A \wedge_C B
\end{array}
\]

namely, $A \wedge_C B$ is the coproduct (see Section 2.1) $A \wedge B$ modulo the relations $(af(c), b) \sim (a, g(c)b)$. Using the usual tensor product notation, this is written $A \otimes_C B$. Since the smash product of monoids $A, B$ is the tensor product as $\mathbb{F}_1$-monoids, it is often denoted $A \otimes \mathbb{F}_1 B$ or simply $A \otimes B$. In an algebraic setting the $\otimes$ notation is standard and we follow this convention. We will only use the smash product notation $\wedge$ in situations where we wish to emphasize its coproduct/topological nature and do not require the language of tensor products. When no clear $C$-monoid structure on two monoids $A, B$ is present, the notation $A \otimes B$ will always mean $A \otimes \mathbb{F}_1 B = A \wedge B$.

Remark 2.3.5. This notation for the tensor product of monoids differs from the convention for $A$-sets. When $A, B$ are monoids and $B$ is also an $A$-set, the notation $A \otimes B$ can be ambiguous. If the tensor product is as monoids, then $A \otimes B = A \otimes \mathbb{F}_1 B = A \wedge B$, but as $A$-sets, $A \otimes B = A \otimes_A B = B \neq A \wedge B$. It should be clear from the context whether the tensor product is formed as ($\mathbb{F}_1$-)monoids or $A$-sets; we will be explicit when there is a possibility for confusion.

Example 2.3.6. (Notation Warning!) Any monoid $A$ is an $\mathbb{F}_1$-monoid and may be written as the tensor product $\mathbb{F}_1 \otimes A$. For the free monoid on one variable $\mathbb{F}_1 \otimes \langle x \rangle = \{0, 1, x, x^2, \ldots\}$ we adopt the algebra notation of commutative ring theory: $\mathbb{F}_1[x]$. In general, we write $\mathbb{F}_1[x_1, \ldots, x_n] = \mathbb{F}_1[x]^\otimes n$ for the free monoid on $n$ variables. If $A$ is any monoid, $A[x_1, \ldots, x_n] = A \otimes \mathbb{F}_1[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ is the free $A$-monoid on $n$ generators and its elements are monomials with coefficients in $A$.

Let $m_1, \ldots, m_{2k}$, $k > 0$, be monomials of $A[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ and $R$ the congruence generated by the relations $m_1 \sim m_2, \ldots, m_{2k-1} \sim m_{2k}$. When convenient, we may write $A[x_1, \ldots, x_n \mid m_1 = m_2, \ldots, m_{2k-1} = m_{2k}]$ or $A[x_1, \ldots, x_n \mid m_1 \sim m_2, \ldots, m_{2k-1} \sim m_{2k}]$ for the quotient $A[x_1, \ldots, x_n]/R$.

In the absence of context, the notation $A[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ is ambiguous since it may refer to either the free $A$-monoid on $n$ variables or the free $A$-set with generators $x_1, \ldots, x_n$.
(see Sections 2.2.2, 3.3.2). Therefore, when using this notation, the author will always be explicit about the nature of the object as an $A$-monoid or free $A$-set.

**Proposition 2.3.7.** Let $A, B$ be monoids. Every ideal $K \subseteq A \otimes B$ can be written as $K = \bigcup_{\lambda \in \Lambda} I_\lambda \otimes J_\lambda$ where $I_\lambda \subseteq A$, $J_\lambda \subseteq B$ are (not necessarily proper) ideals and $A$ is an indexing set. Moreover, at least one of the sets of ideals $\{I_\lambda\}$ and $\{J_\lambda\}$ can be chosen to contain distinct elements.

**Proof.** First note that $K$ is the union of the ideals $Ax \otimes By$, $x \otimes y \in K$, since if $x \otimes y \in K$, then $Ax \otimes By \subseteq K$. This proves the first assertion.

Next, note that if $I, I' \subseteq A$ and $J \subseteq B$ are ideals, then $(I \otimes J) \cup (I' \otimes J) = (I \cup I') \otimes J$ (likewise, if $I \subseteq A$ and $J, J' \subseteq B$ are ideals, then $(I \otimes J) \cup (I \otimes J') = I \otimes (J \cup J')$). Now for each $y \in B$, define $I_y = \bigcup_{x \otimes y \in K} Ax$ and for fixed $I_\lambda = I_y$, set $J_\lambda = \bigcup \{By \mid I_y = I_\lambda\}$. Evidently, $K = \bigcup_{\lambda \in \Lambda} I_\lambda \otimes J_\lambda$ and the set $\{I_\lambda\}$ of ideals contains distinct elements. Moreover, it is clear from the construction how we could have instead made the $J_\lambda$ distinct, i.e. start by defining $J_x = \bigcup_{x \otimes y \in K} By$. □

Let $f : A \to B$ and $g : A \to C$ be monoid morphisms. An $A$-monoid morphism $h : B \to C$ is a monoid morphism that is also an $A$-set map, where $B, C$ are considered $A$-sets by restriction of scalars (see Section 2.3). We say the monoid morphism $f$ is finite and that $B$ is a finite $A$-monoid when $B$ is finitely generated as an $A$-set. The morphism is of finite type and $B$ is a finitely generated $A$-monoid when there exists elements $b_1, \ldots, b_n \in B$ such that every element of $B$ can be written as a monomial in the $b_i$ and elements of $f(A)$. In this case we say that the elements of $B$ are monomials in the $b_i$ with coefficients in $f(A)$. Notice that a monoid is finitely generated (see Section 2.1) when it is finitely generated as an $F_1$-monoid.

**Proposition 2.3.8.** Let $A$ be a monoid.

i) If $B$ is a countably generated $A$-monoid, then $B \cong A[x_1, x_2, \ldots]/R$ for some congruence $R$ on $A[x_1, x_2, \ldots]$.

ii) $A \cong G_+[x_1, \ldots]/R$ where $G_+ = A/m$ is the pointed group of units of $A$. Moreover, when the submonoid $m \cup \{1\} \subseteq A$ is finitely generated, $A$ is a finitely generated $A/m$-monoid.
Proof. i) Let \( b_1, b_2, \ldots \) be generators for \( B \) not in \( f(A) \). Then every element of \( B \) can be written as a product of elements of \( f(A) \) and the \( b_i \). Hence, there is a surjection \( A[x_1, x_2, \ldots] \to B \) defined by \( a x_{i_1}^{n_1} \cdots x_{i_k}^{n_k} \mapsto f(a) b_{i_1}^{n_1} \cdots b_{i_k}^{n_k} \). The congruence \( R \) occurs as the pullback of this surjection with itself (see Proposition 2.1.7).

ii) Use (i) considering \( A \) as a \( A/\mathfrak{m} \)-monoid via the obvious inclusion. Then \( A \setminus (A/\mathfrak{m}) = \mathfrak{m} \setminus \{0\} \) is the nonzero elements of maximal ideal. When \( \mathfrak{m} \) is finitely generated, only finitely many \( x_i \) are necessary. \( \square \)

Remark 2.3.9. Proposition 2.3.8 provides a simple way to create many monoids. Beginning with a monoid \( A \), the \( A/\mathfrak{m} \)-monoid structure is the simplest way to describe it. Alternatively, let \( G_+ \) be a pointed abelian group (hence monoid) and let \( S \) be any commutative, pointed semigroup. Adding a distinguished identity \( S' = S \sqcup \{1\} \) makes \( S' \) a monoid and we may tensor over \( \mathbb{F}_1 \): \( A = G_+ \otimes S' \). Note that if \( S \) is already a monoid with identity \( e \), then \( e \) is an (nontrivial) idempotent element of \( S' \). Let \( S' \to \mathbb{F}_1 \) be the map sending all non-identity elements to 0. Tensoring with \( G_+ \) induces the map \( A \to G_+ \) having kernel \( S \). Since \( G_+ \) is a pointed group, \( (G \times S)/(G \times 0) \) is the maximal ideal of \( A \).

2.4 Localization

Let \( A \) be a monoid and \( S \subseteq A \) a multiplicatively closed subset. Define \( S^{-1}A \) to be the monoid with elements \( a/s, a \in A \) and \( s \in S \), where \( a/s = b/t \) if there is a \( u \in S \) such that \( u(at) = u(bs) \). The multiplication in \( S^{-1}A \) is induced by \( A \), \( (a/s)(b/t) = ab/st \). Note that \( (1/s)(s/1) = 1 \) so that any element of \( S \) becomes a unit in \( S^{-1}A \). Clearly \( S \subseteq A^\times \) means \( S^{-1}A = A \). The monoid \( S^{-1}A \) is called the monoid of fractions of \( A \) with respect to \( S \) or the localization of \( A \) at \( S \).

There are special cases which warrant their own notation. When \( p \in \text{MSpec}(A) \), \( S = A \setminus p \) is multiplicatively closed and \( S^{-1}A \), denoted \( A_p \), is the localization of \( A \) at \( p \).

When \( S = \{s, s^2, \ldots\} \) is generated by a single element, we write \( S^{-1}A = A_s \) or \( A[\frac{1}{s}] \).

More generally, when \( S \) is generated by \( s_1, \ldots, s_n \) we write \( S^{-1}A = A[\frac{1}{s_1}, \ldots, \frac{1}{s_n}] \). Note there is a canonical map \( A \to S^{-1}A \) defined by \( a \to a/1 \) which is injective only when
S ∪ {0} ⊆ A is a cancellative monoid.

**Remark 2.4.1.** The monoid $S^{-1}A$ satisfies the usual universal property of localization. Namely, let $f : A \to B$ be any morphism such that the image of every element of $S \subseteq A$ is a unit in $B$. Then $f$ factors through the morphism $A \to S^{-1}A$ as in the following diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \longrightarrow & S^{-1}A \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow 1 \\
B & \downarrow & \end{array}
\]

**Remark 2.4.2.** A multiplicatively closed subset $S \subseteq A$ is saturated when $xy \in S$ implies $x, y \in S$. If $S$ is any multiplicatively closed subset of $A$, the saturation $\overline{S}$ of $S$ is the intersection of all the saturated multiplicatively closed subsets of $A$ containing $S$. Moreover, the complement of a saturated, multiplicatively closed subset of $A$ is a prime ideal.

**Proposition 2.4.3.** Let $A$ be a monoid and $S \subseteq A \setminus \{0\}$ a multiplicatively closed subset. Then $S^{-1}A$ exists and:

i) $S^{-1}A = A_p$ for some $p \in \text{MSpec}(A)$.

ii) If $A$ is finitely generated, $A_p = A_s$ for some $s \in A \setminus p$.

iii) The proper ideals of $S^{-1}A$ correspond to the ideals of $A$ contained in $A \setminus S$.

**Proof.** i) First notice that $S^{-1}A = \overline{S^{-1}A}$, since if $ab \in S$, then $\frac{1}{a} = \frac{b}{ab} \in S^{-1}A$. Similarly, $\frac{1}{b} = a \frac{1}{ab} \in S^{-1}A$. Therefore we may assume that $S$ is saturated. Then $xy \in A \setminus S$ and $x, y \notin A \setminus S$, that is $x, y \in S$, implies $xy \in S$. Hence, $A \setminus S$ is a prime ideal.

ii) Let $a_1, \ldots, a_n$ be the generators for $A$. Since $S = A \setminus p$ is saturated, it must be generated by the $a_i \notin p$. For $s = \prod_{a_i \notin p} a_i$, we have $A_p = A_s$.

iii) If $I \subseteq A$ is an ideal and $I \cap S \neq \emptyset$, then $S^{-1}I$ contains units, hence is not proper. Conversely, if $J \subseteq S^{-1}A$ is an ideal, then $J = S^{-1}I$ where $I = \{a \in A \mid a/1 \in J\}$. \hfill \Box

There are two special monoids obtained from localization: the **total monoid of fractions** and **group completion**. When $S$ is the set of non-zero divisors of $A$, $G(A) = S^{-1}A$ is the **total monoid of fractions**. When $A$ is torsion free, i.e. 0 generates a prime ideal,
the localization $A_0 = A_{(0)}$ of $A$ at $(0)$ is the group completion. The canonical map $A \to A_0$ is an inclusion precisely when $A$ is cancellative.

Let $X$ be an $A$-set and $S \subseteq A$ multiplicatively closed. Define $S^{-1}X$, the localization of $X$ at $S$, to be the $S^{-1}A$-set with elements $x/s$, $x \in X$ and $s \in S$, where $x/s = x'/t$ when $u(tx) = u(sx')$ for some $u \in S$. The action of $S^{-1}A$ on $S^{-1}X$ is simply $(a/s)(x/t) = ax/st$.

The $S^{-1}A$-set $S^{-1}X$ satisfies the usual universal property. Consider an $S^{-1}A$-set $Y$ as an $A$-set by restriction of scalars. Then every $A$-set morphism $f : X \to Y$ factors through $X \to S^{-1}X$ as in the following diagram:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \to & S^{-1}X \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow \text{id} \\
Y & & \\
\end{array}
$$

When $S = A\setminus p$, the notation $X_p$ will denote $S^{-1}X$ and we call $X_p$ the localization of $X$ at $p$. Note that the previous notations apply when $X = I$ is an ideal of $A$, namely $S^{-1}I$ is the image of $I$ in $S^{-1}A$ and likewise for $I_p$.

**Proposition 2.4.4.** Let $X$ be an $A$-set and $S \subseteq A$ multiplicatively closed.

i) Let $0 \neq x \in X$. Then $\text{ann}(x) \cap S \neq \emptyset$ if and only if $x/1 = 0$ in $S^{-1}X$.

ii) $S^{-1}X \cong X \otimes_A S^{-1}A$.

**Proof.** i) Suppose $a \in \text{ann}(x) \cap S$. Then $\frac{1}{a} \in S^{-1}A$ and $x = (\frac{1}{a}a)x = \frac{1}{a}0 = 0$. Conversely, suppose $0 \neq x \in X$ but $x/1 = 0$ in $S^{-1}X$. By definition, there exists $u \in S$ with $ux = u0 = 0$, hence $u \in \text{ann}(x) \cap S$.

ii) The map $X \times S^{-1}A \to S^{-1}X$ defined by $(x, a/s) \mapsto ax/s$ is bi-equivariant and, by the universal property of tensor products, induces $f : X \otimes_A S^{-1}A \to S^{-1}X$. The induced map is surjective as $x \otimes 1/s \mapsto x/s$ for any $x \in X$ and $s \in S$. Now if $f(x \otimes a/s) = ax/s = bx'/t = f(x' \otimes b/t)$, there exists $u \in S$ such that $u(tx) = u(sbx')$ in $X$. Hence,

$$
x \otimes \frac{a}{s} = x \otimes \frac{aut}{sut} = u(tx) \otimes \frac{1}{sut} = u(sbx') \otimes \frac{1}{sut} = x' \otimes \frac{sub}{sut} = x' \otimes \frac{b}{t}.
$$
2.5 Chain conditions

We say an $A$-set $X$ is noetherian when it satisfies the ascending chain condition (ACC) on $A$-subsets. That is, every increasing chain of $A$-subsets $X_1 \subseteq X_2 \subseteq \cdots$ stabilizes so that $X_n = X_{n+1} = \cdots$ for some $n > 0$. Similarly, $X$ is artinian when it satisfies the descending chain condition (DCC) on $A$-subsets, namely every descending chain of $A$-subsets $X_1 \supseteq X_2 \supseteq \cdots$ stabilizes. A monoid $A$ is noetherian (respectively artinian) when it is noetherian (respectively artinian) when considered as an $A$-set. Since $A$-subsets of $A$ are simply ideals, $A$ is noetherian (respectively artinian) when it satisfies the ACC (respectively DCC) on ideals. The proof of the following result is an exact replica of the analogous result in ring theory.

**Proposition 2.5.1.** An $A$-set $X$ is noetherian if and only if every $A$-subset is finitely generated. Hence, $A$ is noetherian if and only if every ideal is finitely generated.

We now verify some standard results for noetherian $A$-sets and monoids.

**Proposition 2.5.2.** The free monoid on one variable $F_1[x]$ is noetherian.

**Proof.** Every ideal is generated by its element of lowest degree. \(\square\)

**Proposition 2.5.3.** Let $0 \to X' \xrightarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} X'' \to 0$ be an a.e.s. of $A$-sets. Then

i) $X$ is noetherian if and only if $X'$ and $X''$ are noetherian.

ii) $X$ is artinian if and only if $X'$ and $X''$ are artinian.

iii) If $X_i$ is a noetherian (resp. artinian) $A$-set for $1 \leq i \leq n$, then $\bigvee_{i=1}^{n} X_i$ is noetherian (resp. artinian).

**Proof.** i) Suppose $X$ is noetherian. Any ascending chain of $A$-subsets of $X'$ is also an ascending chain in $X$ since $X' \subseteq X$ and thus, stabilizes. Likewise, an ascending chain in $X''$ corresponds to an ascending chain in $X$ under $g^{-1}$.

Conversely, let $\{X_i\}_{i \geq 0}$ be an ascending chain in $X$. Then the $\{f^{-1}(X_i)\}$ and $\{g(X_i)\}$ form ascending chains in $X'$ and $X''$ which stabilize. Since each $X_i$ is the union of the image of $f^{-1}(X_i)$ and the inverse image of $g(X_i) \setminus \{0\}$, the $\{X_i\}$ also stabilize.

ii) Similar to (i).

iii) Use induction with (i),(ii) on the a.e.s. $0 \to X_n \to \bigvee_{i=1}^{n} X_i \to \bigvee_{i=1}^{n-1} X_i \to 0$. \(\square\)
Proposition 2.5.4. Let \( f : X \to Y \) be an \( A \)-set morphism. If \( X \) is noetherian, so is \( f(X) \).

Proof. Let \( X' \subseteq f(X) \) be an \( A \)-subset. Let \( f^{-1}(X') \subseteq X \) denote the set theoretic inverse of elements in \( X' \). Then \( f^{-1}(X') \) is finitely generated by, say, \( x_1, \ldots, x_n \). Hence, the \( f(x_i) \) form a finite set of generators for \( X' \).

Proposition 2.5.5. Let \( A, B \) be noetherian monoids and \( A[x] \) the free \( A \)-monoid in one variable. Then

i) \( A \otimes B \) is noetherian.

ii) \( A[x_1, \ldots, x_n] \) is noetherian.

Proof. i) By Proposition 2.3.7, every ideal \( K \subseteq A \otimes B \) is of the form \( K = \bigcup_{\lambda \in \Lambda} I_\lambda \otimes J_\lambda \) for some indexing set \( \Lambda \). Since \( A, B \) are noetherian, for fixed \( \lambda \), both \( I_\lambda = (a_1, \ldots, a_n) \) and \( J_\lambda = (b_1, \ldots, b_m) \) are finitely generated so that \( I_\lambda \otimes J_\lambda \) is finitely generated by \( \{a_i \otimes b_j\} \). Thus, we need only show that the indexing set \( \Lambda \) can be made finite.

Proposition 2.3.7 also shows that at least one of the sets \( \{I_\lambda\} \) and \( \{J_\lambda\} \) have distinct ideals, say \( I_\lambda \neq I_{\lambda'} \) for \( \lambda \neq \lambda' \). If \( \Lambda \) were infinite, we can construct a strictly increasing chain of ideals \( I_{\lambda_1} \subseteq I_{\lambda_1} \cup I_{\lambda_2} \subseteq \cdots \), where \( \lambda_{n+1} \not\in \{\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n\} \), in \( A \) which contradicts the noetherian assumption.

ii) Use Proposition 2.5.2 and (i) inductively.

Proposition 2.5.6. Let \( A \) be a noetherian monoid.

i) Any homomorphic image of \( A \) is noetherian.

ii) Finitely generated \( A \)-monoids are noetherian.

iii) If \( S \subseteq A \) is multiplicatively closed, then \( S^{-1}A \) is noetherian.

Proof. i) Use Proposition 2.5.4 on the ideals of \( A \).

ii) A finitely generated \( A \)-monoid is the homomorphic image of \( A[x_1, \ldots, x_n] \) for some \( n > 0 \). The latter monoid is noetherian by Proposition 2.5.5(ii). Now use (i).

iii) By Proposition 2.4.3(iii), the ideals of \( A \) contained in \( S^{-1}A \) correspond to ideals contained in \( A \backslash S \). If \( I = (x_1, \ldots, x_n) \) is finitely generated, \( S^{-1}I \) is generated by \( x_i/1 \).
Proposition 2.5.7. Let $A$ be a noetherian monoid and $X$ an $A$-set. If $X$ is finitely generated, then it is noetherian.

Proof. Let $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ be a set of generators for $X$. Then there is a surjection $\bigvee_{i=1}^n A_i \to X$ defined by $1_i \mapsto x_i$. Now use Proposition 2.5.4. \qed

Before proceeding we recall a definition. Consider the following diagram of $A$-sets:

$$
X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z.
$$

We say that $h$ coequalizes $f$ and $g$ when $hf = hg$ and that $h$, or $Z$, is the coequalizer of $f, g$ when it satisfies the following universal property:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y & \xrightarrow{h} & Z \\
& \xrightarrow{g} & & \xrightarrow{h'} & \\
& & \xrightarrow{1 \equiv p} & \\
& & & Z' \\
\end{array}
$$

namely, if $h' : Y \to Z'$ is any other morphism that coequalizes $f$ and $g$, there exists a morphism $p : Z \to Z'$ such that $h' = ph$. Of course, this is just the universal product for colimits applied to the diagram $\cdot \Rightarrow \cdot$. We sometimes represent the codomain of the coequalizer map by $Z = \text{coeq}(f, g)$. Coequalizers play a larger role in the theory of monoids (resp. $A$-sets) since every monoid (resp. $A$-set) occurs as a coequalizer, but not as a quotient by an $A$-subset. See Chapter 3 for more details.

In general there are many more congruences on a monoid than there are ideals; obviously every ideal defines a congruence. Then why not define a monoid $A$ to be noetherian when it satisfies the DCC on quotient monoids? Equivalently, when $A$ has the ACC on congruences. We will see in this section that monoids that have the ACC on congruences coincide with finitely generated monoids.

The following result is clear, as $A$-subsets determine congruences:

Lemma 2.5.8. Let $X$ be an $A$-set. If $X$ has the ACC on congruences, then $X$ is noetherian.

A simple example of a noetherian monoid which does not have the ACC on congruences is the following: let $G$ be the free abelian group on countably many generators $x_i$. 

\[\text{Proposition 2.5.7.} \] Let $A$ be a noetherian monoid and $X$ an $A$-set. If $X$ is finitely generated, then it is noetherian.

\[\text{Proof.} \] Let $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ be a set of generators for $X$. Then there is a surjection $\bigvee_{i=1}^n A_i \to X$ defined by $1_i \mapsto x_i$. Now use Proposition 2.5.4. \qed

Before proceeding we recall a definition. Consider the following diagram of $A$-sets:

$$
X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z.
$$

We say that $h$ coequalizes $f$ and $g$ when $hf = hg$ and that $h$, or $Z$, is the coequalizer of $f, g$ when it satisfies the following universal property:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \\
& \xrightarrow{1 \equiv p} & \\
& & & Z' \\
\end{array}
$$

namely, if $h' : Y \to Z'$ is any other morphism that coequalizes $f$ and $g$, there exists a morphism $p : Z \to Z'$ such that $h' = ph$. Of course, this is just the universal product for colimits applied to the diagram $\cdot \Rightarrow \cdot$. We sometimes represent the codomain of the coequalizer map by $Z = \text{coeq}(f, g)$. Coequalizers play a larger role in the theory of monoids (resp. $A$-sets) since every monoid (resp. $A$-set) occurs as a coequalizer, but not as a quotient by an $A$-subset. See Chapter 3 for more details.

In general there are many more congruences on a monoid than there are ideals; obviously every ideal defines a congruence. Then why not define a monoid $A$ to be noetherian when it satisfies the DCC on quotient monoids? Equivalently, when $A$ has the ACC on congruences. We will see in this section that monoids that have the ACC on congruences coincide with finitely generated monoids.

The following result is clear, as $A$-subsets determine congruences:

\[\text{Lemma 2.5.8.} \] Let $X$ be an $A$-set. If $X$ has the ACC on congruences, then $X$ is noetherian.

A simple example of a noetherian monoid which does not have the ACC on congruences is the following: let $G$ be the free abelian group on countably many generators $x_i$. 

Then \( G_+ \) is a monoid and \((x_1 \sim 0) \subseteq (x_1 \sim 0, x_2 \sim 0) \subseteq (x_1 \sim 0, x_2 \sim 0, x_3 \sim 0) \subseteq \cdots\) is an ascending chain of congruences (whose generators are shown) on \( G_+ \) which clearly does not stabilize. However, \( G_+ \) is noetherian since the only proper ideal is \((0)\).

We now briefly introduce a functor we require for subsequent results. For more information see Section 3.2. Given a commutative ring \( k \) and monoid \( A \), we may form the \( k \)-algebra \( k[A] \) which is the quotient of the free \( k \)-module with generators the elements of \( A \) by the submodule generated by \( 0_A \). A generic element of \( k[A] \) is a finite \( k \)-linear sum of nonzero elements of \( A \) with multiplication provided by both \( A \) and \( k \). This construction induces a functor \( k[-] : \text{Mon}^* \to \text{k-algebras} \), called the \( k \)-realization of \( A \), defined by \( A \mapsto k[A] \). In particular \( k[F_1] = k \). We can extend this definition to obtain \( k[-] : \text{A-sets} \to k[A]\text{-mod} \) defined by \( X \mapsto k[X] \), where \( k[X] \) is the quotient of the free \( k[A]\)-module with generators the elements of \( X \) by the submodule generated by \( 0_X \). Of course, a generic element of \( k[X] \) is a finite \( k \)-linear sum of nonzero elements of \( X \).

**Proposition 2.5.9.** If \( A \) is a finitely generated monoid and \( k \) is a noetherian ring, then \( k[A] \) is a noetherian ring.

**Proof.** Since \( A \) is finitely generated by, say \( a_1, \ldots, a_n \), we may write it as the quotient of a free monoid in \( n \) variables \( \langle 0, 1, x_1, \ldots, x_n \rangle \). Then \( k[A] \) is the homomorphic image of the polynomial ring \( k[x_1, \ldots, x_n] \), which is noetherian by the Hilbert Basis Theorem in commutative ring theory.

**Lemma 2.5.10.** Let \( X \) be an \( A \)-set and \( R_1 \subseteq R_2 \) be congruences on \( X \). Let \( p_1 : X \to X/R_1 \) and \( k[p_1] : k[X] \to k[X/R_1] \) be the usual projection maps and their \( k \)-realizations respectively. Then \( R_1 = R_2 \) if and only if \( \ker(k[p_1]) = \ker(k[p_2]) \).

**Proof.** Consider the following diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
0 & \longrightarrow & \ker(k[p_1]) & \longrightarrow & k[X] & \xrightarrow{k[p_1]} & k[X/R_1] & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow & & \downarrow(q) & & \downarrow & & \downarrow 0 \\
0 & \longrightarrow & \ker(k[p_2]) & \longrightarrow & k[X] & \xrightarrow{k[p_2]} & k[X/R_2] & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
\end{array}
\]

where \( q : X/R_1 \to X/R_2 \) is the surjection induced by the containment \( R_1 \subseteq R_2 \). If \( R_1 = R_2 \), then \( q \), and hence \( k[q] \), is the identity map so that \( f \) is the identity.
map. If $\ker(k[p_1]) = \ker(k[p_2])$, then $f$ is the identity map and so is $k[q]$. Certainly $q : X/R_1 \to X/R_2$ is the identity map and hence, $R_1 = R_2$.

**Proposition 2.5.11.** An $A$-set $X$ has the ACC on congruences when $k[X]$ is a noetherian $k[A]$-module.

**Proof.** Let $R_1 \subseteq R_2 \subseteq \cdots$ be an ascending chain of congruences on $X$ and $X/R_1 \to X/R_2 \to \cdots$ the associated descending chain of quotient $A$-sets. Let $p_i : X \to X/R_i$ denote the projection map and consider the $k$-realizations $k[p_i] : k[X] \to k[X/R_i]$.

As in Lemma 2.5.10, the $k[p_i]$ give rise to an increasing chain of $k[A]$-submodules $\ker(k[p_1]) \subseteq \ker(k[p_2]) \subseteq \cdots$ that stabilizes since, by assumption, $k[X]$ is noetherian. Hence, there is an $N \geq 0$ such that

$$\ker(k[p_i]) = \ker(k[p_{i+1}]) = \cdots$$

for all $i \geq N$. By Lemma 2.5.10, we have $R_i = R_{i+1} = \cdots$ for all $i \geq N$.

**Corollary 2.5.12.** Let $A$ be a finitely generated monoid and $X$ an $A$-set. Then $X$ has the ACC on congruences if and only if $X$ is noetherian.

**Proof.** When $X$ has the ACC on congruences, it also has the ACC on $A$-subsets by Lemma 2.5.8. Conversely, suppose $X$ is noetherian and let $k$ be any commutative, noetherian ring. By Proposition 2.5.9, $k[A]$ is a noetherian ring and since $X$ is noetherian, it is finitely generated. Then $k[X]$ is finitely generated as a $k[A]$-module, hence noetherian. Now use Proposition 2.5.11.

We now summarize the results:

**Theorem 2.5.13.** Let $A$ be a monoid. Then $A$ is finitely generated if and only if $A$ has the ACC on congruences.

**Proof.** Assuming $A$ is finitely generated, the result follows from Proposition 2.5.5 and Corollary 2.5.11 with $X = A$. Now, assume $A$ has the ACC on congruences and suppose it is not finitely generated, say $A = \mathbb{F}_1[a_1, a_2, \ldots]$. Then we can construct a non-stabilizing chain of congruences $R_1 \subseteq R_2 \subseteq \cdots$ where $R_i$ is generated by relations $\{a_j \sim \epsilon(a_j)\}_{j \leq n}$ and $\epsilon(a_j) = 1$ when $a_j \in A^\times$ and 0 otherwise.
It is not clear whether the importance of monoids having the ACC on congruences will outweigh noetherian monoids. Thus we leave the definition of noetherian fixed and consider the situation nothing more than an inconvenience.

**Lemma 2.5.14.** Let \( A \) be a noetherian monoid. For any ideal \( I \) of \( A \), \( (\sqrt{I})^n \subseteq I \) for some \( n \).

**Proof.** Let \( \sqrt{I} = (x_1, \ldots, x_k) \) with \( x_i^{n_i} \in I \) for \( n_i > 0, 1 \leq i \leq k \). Let \( m = \sum_i(n_i - 1) + 1 \). Then \( (\sqrt{I})^m \) is generated by the products \( x_1^{r_1} \cdots x_k^{r_k} \) with \( \sum r_i = m \). From the definition of \( m \) we must have \( r_i \geq n_i \) for some \( 1 \leq i \leq k \), hence every monomial generating \( \sqrt{I} \) is contained in \( I \).

### 2.5.1 Artinian monoids

The theory of artinian monoids is not as simple as that of artinian rings due to the lack of cancellation. It is a well known result that a ring is artinian only when it is noetherian and has dimension 0. This is not the case for artinian monoids, in fact there are artinian monoids of any dimension.

**Example 2.5.15.** Let \( A = \mathbb{F}_1[x_1, \ldots, x_n]/(x_1^2 = x_1, \ldots, x_n^2 = x_n) \). Then \( A \) is artinian since \( A = \{0, 1, x_1^{\epsilon_1} \cdots x_n^{\epsilon_n} \mid \epsilon_i = 0, 1\} \) is a finite set. Here \( A \) has \( 2^n \) primes and Krull dimension \( n \) (see Section 2.1.3).

It is also not the case that artinian monoids need are noetherian. For example, the maximal ideal of the monoid \( A = \mathbb{F}_1[x_1, x_2, \ldots] \) when \( i \leq j \) is not finitely generated, but the ideals of \( A \) satisfy the DCC. The ideals of \( A \) are \( (0), Ax_i, i \geq 1 \), and the maximal ideal \( m = (x_1, x_2, \ldots) \); also \( Ax_i \subseteq Ax_j \) only when \( i \leq j \). Hence, any fixed ideal \( Ax_n \) contains only finitely many ideals.

**Lemma 2.5.16.** Let \( A \) be a monoid, \( m \subseteq A \) its maximal ideal and \( X \) an \( A \)-set. If \( X \) is finitely generated as an \( A/m \)-set, then \( X \) is artinian and noetherian.

**Proof.** Since \( G_+ = A/m \) is a pointed abelian group, \( X \) is a finite wedge sum of orbits of \( G \) considered as a \( G_+ \)-set; namely \( X = \bigvee_{i=1}^n (G/H_i)_+ \) where every \( H_i \) is a subgroup of \( G \). Write \( x_1, \ldots, x_n \) for the generators. Then every \( A \)-subset \( X' \subseteq X \) is generated by a subset of the \( x_i \) so that every descending chain \( X_1 \supseteq X_2 \supseteq \cdots \) must stabilize. \( \square \)
Theorem 2.5.17. Let $A$ be a monoid and $\mathfrak{m} \subseteq A$ its maximal ideal. If

i) $\mathfrak{m}$ is finitely generated as an ideal,

ii) $\mathfrak{m}^n = \mathfrak{m}^{n+1}$ for some $n > 0$, and

iii) $\mathfrak{m}^n$ is finitely generated as an $A/\mathfrak{m}$-set

then $A$ is artinian. Of course (i) may be removed if $A$ is noetherian.

Proof. If $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ are a set of generators for $\mathfrak{m}$, then $\mathfrak{m}/\mathfrak{m}^n$ is generated as an $A/\mathfrak{m}$-set by all monomials in the $x_i$ of degree less than $n$. Since, as $A/\mathfrak{m}$-sets, $\mathfrak{m} \cong (\mathfrak{m}/\mathfrak{m}^n) \lor \mathfrak{m}^n$, $\mathfrak{m}$ is an artinian $A$-set by Lemma 2.5.16. Hence, $A$ is an artinian monoid.

Although Example 2.5.15 shows not every artinian monoid is 0-dimensional, the converse holds.

Corollary 2.5.18. A 0-dimensional noetherian monoid $A$ is artinian.

Proof. As every monoid is local, $A$ has at least one prime ideal and this must be the maximal ideal $\mathfrak{m}$ of $A$. Moreover, $\mathfrak{m}$ is (trivially) the intersection of all prime ideals in $A$ so by 2.6.2 we have $\mathfrak{m} = \text{nil}(A)$. By Lemma 2.5.14, $\mathfrak{m}^n = 0$ for some $n > 0$ and since $A$ is noetherian, $\mathfrak{m}$ is finitely generated. Hence $A$ is artinian by Theorem 2.5.17.

2.6 Primary decomposition

Much of the theory of primary decomposition in commutative ring theory carries through to monoids since it does not rely upon the underlying abelian group structure of the ring. Below we further develop the theory of noetherian monoids since these are of primary interest.

Lemma 2.6.1. Every irreducible ideal of a noetherian monoid is primary.

Proof. An ideal $I \subseteq A$ is primary if and only if the zero ideal of $A/I$ is primary. Therefore we need only show when $(0)$ is irreducible, it is primary. Let $xy = 0$ with $y \neq 0$; we will show $x^n = 0$. Consider the ascending chain $\text{ann}(x) \subseteq \text{ann}(x^2) \subseteq \cdots$, where $\text{ann}(x) = \{a \in A \mid ax = 0\}$. By the noetherian property, this chain must stabilize, say $\text{ann}(x^n) = \text{ann}(x^{n+1}) = \cdots$ for some $n > 0$. 


We claim that \(0 = (x^n) \cap (y)\). Let \(a \in (x^n) \cap (y)\), say \(a = bx^n = cy\). Then \(0 = c(xy) = ax = (bx^n)x = bx^{n+1}\). Hence \(b \in \text{ann}(x^{n+1}) = \text{ann}(x^n)\) giving \(a = bx^n = 0\). Since \((0)\) is irreducible and \(y \neq 0\), we must have \(x^n = 0\) proving \((0)\) is primary.

**Theorem 2.6.2** (Primary decomposition). In a noetherian monoid every ideal \(I\) can be written as the finite intersection of irreducible primary ideals \(I = \cap_i q_i\).

**Proof.** Suppose the result is false. Since \(A\) is noetherian, the set of ideals which cannot be written as a finite intersection of irreducible ideals has a maximal element, say \(I\). Since \(I\) is not irreducible, it can be written \(I = J \cap K\) where \(J, K\) are ideals of \(A\) containing \(I\). By maximality, both \(J\) and \(K\) (and hence \(I\)) can be written as a finite intersection of irreducible ideals. This is a contradiction, and the theorem follows via Lemma 2.6.1.

**Remark 2.6.3.** Recall that \(A\) is *reduced* if whenever \(a, b \in A\) satisfy \(a^2 = b^2\) and \(a^3 = b^3\) then \(a = b\). This implies that \(A\) has no nilpotent elements, i.e., that \(\text{nil}(A) = \{a \in A : a^n = 0\ \text{for some } n\}\) vanishes. By Theorem 2.6.2, \(\text{nil}(A)\) is the intersection of all the prime ideals in \(A\); cf. [6, 1.1]. When \(A\) is a pc monoid, it is reduced if and only if \(\text{nil}(A) = 0\); in this case \(A_{\text{red}} = A/\text{nil}(A)\) is a reduced monoid (see [6, 1.6]). Note that the equivalence of these two conditions does not hold in general.

Let \(A\) be a noetherian monoid and \(I \subseteq A\) an ideal. Given a minimal primary decomposition of \(I\), \(I = \cap_i q_i\), \(\text{Ass}(I)\) denotes the set of prime ideals occurring as the radicals \(p_i = \sqrt{q_i}\); the \(p_i\) are called the associated primes of \(I\). Although the primary decomposition need not be unique, the set \(\text{Ass}(I)\) of associated primes of \(I\) is independent of the minimal primary decomposition, by 2.6.4 below.

**Proposition 2.6.4.** Let \(I \subseteq A\) be an ideal with minimal primary decomposition \(I = \cap_{i=1}^n q_i\) where \(q_i\) is \(p_i\)-primary. Then \(\text{Ass}(I)\) is exactly the set of prime ideals which occur as \(\sqrt{(I : a)}\), where \(a \in A\). Hence \(\text{Ass}(I)\) is independent of the choice of primary decomposition.

In addition, the minimal elements in \(\text{Ass}(I)\) are exactly the set of prime ideals minimal over \(I\).
Proof. (Compare [1, 4.5, 4.6].) First note that
\[ \sqrt{(I : a)} = \sqrt{\cap_i \mathfrak{q}_i : a} = \sqrt{\cap_i (\mathfrak{q}_i : a)} = \cap_i \sqrt{(\mathfrak{q}_i : a)}. \]
By Lemma 2.1.12(ii), this equals \( \cap_{a \not\in \mathfrak{q}_i} \mathfrak{p}_i \). If \( \sqrt{(I : a)} \) is prime, then it is \( \mathfrak{p}_i \) for some \( i \), by Lemma 2.1.12(i). Conversely, by minimality of the primary decomposition, for each \( i \) there exists an \( a_i \not\in \mathfrak{q}_i \) but \( a_i \in \cap_{j \neq i} \mathfrak{q}_j \). Using Lemma 2.1.12(i) once more, we see \( \sqrt{(I : a_i)} = \mathfrak{p}_i \).

Finally, if \( I \subseteq p \) then \( \cap \mathfrak{p}_i \subseteq p \), so \( p \) contains some \( \mathfrak{p}_i \) by Lemma 2.1.12(i). If \( p \) is minimal over \( I \) then necessarily \( p = \mathfrak{p}_i \).

**Proposition 2.6.5.** Let \( A \) be a noetherian monoid and \( I \subseteq A \) an ideal. Then the associated prime ideals of \( I \) are exactly the prime ideals occurring in the set of ideals \((I : a)\) where \( a \in A \).

**Proof.** The ideals \( I_i = \cap_{j \neq i} \mathfrak{q}_j \) strictly contain \( I \) by minimality of the decomposition. Since \( \mathfrak{q}_i \cap I_i = I_i \), any \( a \in I_i \setminus I \) is not contained in \( \mathfrak{q}_i \), hence \((I : a)\) is \( \mathfrak{p}_i \)-primary by Lemma 2.1.12(ii). Now, by Lemma 2.5.14 we have \( \mathfrak{p}_i^n \subseteq \mathfrak{q}_i \) for some \( n > 0 \), hence
\[ \mathfrak{p}_i^n I_i \subseteq \mathfrak{q}_i I_i \subseteq \mathfrak{q}_i \cap I_i = I. \]
Choose \( n \) minimal so that \( \mathfrak{p}_i^n I_i \subseteq I \) (hence in \( I_i \)) and pick \( a \in \mathfrak{p}_i^{n-1} I_i \) with \( a \not\in I \). Since \( \mathfrak{p}_i a \subseteq I \) we have \( \mathfrak{p}_i \subseteq (I : a) \); as \((I : a)\) is \( \mathfrak{p}_i \)-primary, we have \( \mathfrak{p}_i = (I : a) \). Conversely, if \((I : a)\) is prime then it is an associated prime by Proposition 2.6.4.

### 2.7 Normal and factorial monoids

In this section, we establish the facts about normal monoids needed for the theory of divisors.

The vocabulary for integral extensions of monoids mimics that for commutative rings. If \( A \) is a submonoid of \( B \), we say that an element \( b \in B \) is integral over \( A \) when \( b^n \in A \) for some \( n > 0 \), and the integral closure of \( A \) in \( B \) is the submonoid of elements integral over \( A \). If \( A \) is a cancellative monoid, we say that it is normal (or integrally closed) if it equals its integral closure in its group completion. (See [5, 1.6].)
Example 2.7.1. It is elementary that all factorial monoids are normal. Affine toric monoids are normal by [5, 4.1], and so are arbitrary submonoids of a free abelian group closed under divisibility. By [5, 4.5], every finitely generated normal monoid is $A \wedge U$ for an affine toric monoid $A$ and a finite abelian group $U$.

One difference between integrality in commutative ring theory and monoids again results from lack of cancellation. Let $A, B$ be monoids and $x \in B$. Certainly, if $x$ is integral over $A$, then $x^n \in A$ for some $n > 0$ so that $A[x]$ is finitely generated as an $A$-set. However, the converse does not hold. Consider the monoid $A[x]/(x^n = x)$ which is finitely generated as an $A$-set by $1, x, x^2, \ldots, x^{n-1}$ even though $x$ is not integral over $A$.

Lemma 2.7.2. Let $A \subseteq B$ be monoids and $S \subseteq A$ be multiplicatively closed. We have the following:

i) If $B$ is integral over $A$, then $S^{-1}B$ is integral over $S^{-1}A$.

ii) If $B$ is the integral closure of $A$ in a monoid $C$, then $S^{-1}B$ is the integral closure of $S^{-1}A$ in $S^{-1}C$.

iii) If $A$ is normal, then $S^{-1}A$ is normal. More generally, if $B$ is the normalization of $A$, then $S^{-1}B$ is the normalization of $S^{-1}A$.

Proof. Suppose that $b$ is integral over $A$, i.e., $b^n \in A$ for some $n > 0$. Then $b/s \in S^{-1}B$ is integral over $S^{-1}A$ because $(b/s)^n \in S^{-1}A$. This proves (i). For (ii), it suffices by (i) to suppose that $c/1 \in S^{-1}C$ is integral over $S^{-1}A$ and show that $c/1$ is in $S^{-1}B$. If $(c/1)^n = a/s$ in $S^{-1}A$ then $c^n st = at$ in $A$ for some $t \in S$. Thus $cst$ is in $B$, and $c/1 = (cst)/st$ is in $S^{-1}B$. It is immediate that (ii) implies (iii) (see also [5, 1.6]).

Recall that when $A$ is a torsion free monoid, the group completion $A_0$ is obtained from $A$ by localizing at the trivial prime ideal $(0)$. When $A$ is cancellative, $A_0$ contains $A$ as a submonoid.

Lemma 2.7.3. Let $A \subseteq B$ be monoids with $A$ cancellative. If there is a finitely generated ideal $I \subseteq A$ and a $b \in B$ such that $bI \subseteq I$, then $b$ is integral over $A$.

Proof. Let $X = \{x_1, \ldots, x_r\}$ be the set of generators of $I$. Since $bI \subseteq I$, there is a function $\phi : X \rightarrow X$ such that $bx \in A\phi(x)$ for each $x \in X$. Since $X$ is finite, there is
an \( x \in X \) and an \( n \) so that \( \phi^n(x) = x \). For this \( x \) and \( n \) there is an \( a \in A \) such that \( b^n x = ax \) and hence, \( b^n = a \) by cancellation.

**Lemma 2.7.4.** If \( A \) and \( B \) are normal monoids, so is \( A \land B \)

**Proof.** The group completion of \( A \land B \) is \((A \land B)_0 = A_0 \land B_0 \). If \( a \land b \in A_0 \land B_0 \) is integral over \( A \land B \), then \((a \land b)^n = a^n \land b^n \) in \( A \land B \), hence \( a^n \in A \), \( b^n \in B \). By normality, \( a \in A \) and \( b \in B \).

Recall from [5, 8.1] that a *valuation monoid* is a cancellative monoid \( A \) such that for every non-zero \( \alpha \) in the group completion \( A_0 \), either \( \alpha \in A \) or \( \alpha^{-1} \in A \). Passing to units, we see that \( A^\times \) is a subgroup of the abelian group \( A_0^\times \), and the value group is the quotient \( A_0^\times / A^\times \). The value group is a totally ordered abelian group (\( x \geq y \) if and only if \( x/y \in A \)). Following [5, 8.3], we call \( A \) a *discrete valuation monoid*, or DV monoid for short, if the value group is infinite cyclic. In this case, a lifting \( \pi \in A \) of the positive generator of the value group generates the maximal ideal \( m \) of \( A \) and every \( a \in A \) can be written \( a = u \pi^n \) for some \( u \in A^\times \) and \( n \geq 0 \). Here \( \pi \) is called a *uniformizing parameter* for \( A \).

It is easy to see that valuation monoids are normal, and that noetherian valuation monoids are discrete [5, 8.3.1]. We now show that one-dimensional, noetherian normal monoids are DV monoids.

**Proposition 2.7.5.** Every noetherian, one-dimensional, normal monoid is a discrete valuation monoid (and conversely).

**Proof.** Suppose \( A \) is a one-dimensional noetherian normal monoid, and choose a nonzero \( x \) in the maximal ideal \( m \). By primary decomposition 2.6.2, \( \sqrt{xA} \) must be \( m \) and (by Lemma 2.5.14) there is an \( n > 0 \) with \( m^n \subseteq xA \), \( m^{n-1} \not\subseteq xA \). Choose \( y \in m^{n-1} \) with \( y \not\in xA \) and set \( \pi = x/y \in A_0 \). Since \( \pi^{-1} \not\in A \) and \( A \) is normal, \( \pi^{-1} \) is not integral over \( A \). By Lemma 2.7.3, \( \pi^{-1} m \not\subseteq m \); since \( \pi^{-1} m \subseteq A \) by construction, we have \( \pi^{-1} m = A \), or \( m = \pi A \).

Lemma 2.7.3 also implies that \( \pi^{-1} I \not\subseteq I \) for every ideal \( I \). If \( I \neq A \) then \( I \subseteq \pi A \) so \( \pi^{-1} I \subseteq A \). Since \( I = \pi^{-1} (\pi I) \subseteq \pi^{-1} I \), we have an ascending chain of ideals which must
terminate at $\pi^{-n}I = A$ for some $n$. Taking $I = aA$, this shows that every element $a \in A$ can be written $u\pi^n$ for a unique $n \geq 0$ and $u \in A^\times$. Hence every element of $A_0$ can be written $u\pi^n$ for a unique $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $u \in A^\times$, and the valuation map $\text{ord} : A_0 \to \mathbb{Z} \cup \{\infty\}$ defined by $\text{ord}(u\pi^n) = n$ makes $A$ a discrete valuation monoid.

**Corollary 2.7.6.** If $p$ is a height one prime ideal of a noetherian normal monoid $A$ then $A_p$ is a discrete valuation monoid (DV monoid).

**Proof.** The monoid $A_p$ is one dimensional and normal by Lemma 2.7.2. Now use Proposition 2.7.5.

**Lemma 2.7.7.** If $A$ is a noetherian normal monoid, and $p$ is a prime ideal associated to a principal ideal, then $p$ has height one and $p_p$ is a principal ideal of $A_p$.

**Proof.** Let $a \in A$ and $p$ a prime ideal associated to $aA$ so that by Proposition 2.6.5, $p = (a : b)$ for some $b \in A \setminus aA$. To show $p_p \subseteq A_p$ is principal, we may first localize and assume that $A$ has maximal ideal $p$. Let $p^{-1} = \{u \in A_0 \mid up \subseteq A\}$. Since $A \subseteq p^{-1}$, we have $p \subseteq p^{-1}p \subseteq A$, and since $p$ is maximal, we must have $p^{-1}p = p$ or $p^{-1}p = A$.

If $p^{-1}p = p$, every element of $p^{-1}$ must be integral over $A$ by Lemma 2.7.3. Since $A$ is normal, $p^{-1} \subseteq A$, hence $p^{-1} = A$ and $pb \subseteq aA$ implies $b/a \in p^{-1} = A$. This is only the case if $b \in aA$, since $a$ is not a unit, contradicting the assumption. Therefore $p^{-1}p = A$ and there exists $u \in p^{-1}$ with $up = A$, namely $p = u^{-1}A$.

To finish the section we show that any noetherian, normal monoid is the intersection of its localizations at height one primes. As with Corollary 2.7.6, this result parallels the situation in commutative rings.

**Lemma 2.7.8.** Let $A$ be a noetherian monoid and $I \subseteq A$ an ideal.

i) If $I$ is maximal among ideals of the form $(0 : a)$, $a \in A$, then $I$ is an associated prime of 0.

ii) If $a \in A$, then $a = 0$ in $A$ if and only if $a = 0$ in $A_p$ for every prime $p$ associated to 0.

**Proof.** Suppose that $I = (0 : a)$ is maximal, as in (i). If $xy \in I$ but $y \notin I$, then $axy = 0$
and $ay \neq 0$. Hence $I \subseteq I \cup Ax \subseteq (0 : ay)$; by maximality, $I = I \cup Ax$ and $x \in I$. Thus $I$ is prime; by Proposition 2.6.4, $I$ is associated to $(0)$.

Suppose that $0 \neq a \in A$, and set $I = (0 : a)$. By (i), $I \subseteq p$ for some associated prime $p$. But then $a \neq 0$ in $A_p$.

**Theorem 2.7.9.** A noetherian normal monoid $A$ is the intersection of the $A_p$ as $p$ runs over all height one primes of $A$.

**Proof.** That $A$ is contained in the intersection is clear. Now, suppose $a/b \in A_0 \setminus A$ so that $a \not\in bA$. Any $p \in \text{Ass}(b)$ has $p_p$ principal by Lemma 2.7.7, hence height one, and $a/b \not\in A_p$ when $a \not\in bA_p$. Therefore to find an associated prime $p$ of $bA$ with $a \not\in bA_p$ will complete the proof. But this is easy since $a \in bA_p$ for every $p \in \text{Ass}(b)$ if and only if $a = 0$ in $A_p/bA_p = (A/bA)_p$ for every $p \in \text{Ass}(b)$, which happens if and only if $a = 0$ in $A/bA$ by Lemma 2.7.8, which happens if and only if $a \in bA$. Since $a \neq 0$, such a prime must exist.
Chapter 3

Homological algebra

In this chapter we examine the possibilities for a computable homological theory on $A$-sets. To this end we first examine what it would mean to extend the homological theory of abelian categories to $A$-sets using simplicial objects and Quillen’s homotopical algebra [20]. As per the Introduction, computing homotopically is extremely difficult in categories whose objects do not have an underlying (abelian) group structure since general simplicial objects will not be fibrant. To remedy the situation we extend the usual definition of chain complex to double-arrow complex to explore as a replacement for simplicial objects.

All results in this chapter will be proved for $A$-sets but it is clear that they can be extended to more general categories. All results of this chapter apply to categories $C$ which:

i) are concrete, namely every object of $C$ has an underlying set. More precisely, there is a faithful functor $u : C \to \text{Sets}$.

ii) have all equalizers and coequalizers.

iii) have all pullbacks and pushouts.

It is possible that (i) may be too strong of a condition and that all the results of this section can be reworked without using the underlying set of the objects in $C$; instead relying upon the existence of objects like the image of a morphism. We do not pursue this type of generalization any further.

3.1 Preliminaries

We briefly review some definitions given earlier in the thesis. Let $f : X \to Y$ be a morphism of $A$-sets. Then $f$ is admissible when it is the cokernel of a morphism,
equivalently $X/\ker(f) \cong \im(f)$. A sequence of morphisms $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z$ is said to be exact at $Y$ when $\ker(g) = \im(f)$. An exact sequence of the form $0 \to X' \to X \to X'' \to 0$ is called a short exact sequence or s.e.s. for brevity. When every morphism of a s.e.s. is admissible, we say call it an admissible short exact sequence (a.s.e.s.) of a.e.s. for brevity. In this case, using the notation as above, we have

i) $X' \to X$ is an injection.

ii) $X \to X''$ is a surjection and $X/X' \cong X''$.

The adjectives “exact” and “admissible” apply equally well to more general sequences:

$$
\cdots \to X_{n+1} \to X_n \to X_{n-1} \to \cdots
$$

When it will cause no confusion we forgo the usage of “short” in s.e.s. and a.s.e.s., simply referring sequences being exact and/or admissible. In this case we will abbreviate admissible exact sequence by a.e.s.

There are many $A$-sets which cannot be written as the quotient of a free $A$-set by an $A$-subset, e.g. see 2.2.15. This motivates the following definitions. The equalizer (resp. coequalizer) of two morphisms is the limit (resp. colimit) of the following diagram:

$$
\cdot \xrightarrow{i} \cdot
$$

The equalizer of $f, g : X \to Y$ is the morphism $i : Z \to X$ where

$$
Z = \{ x \in X \mid f(x) = g(x) \} \subseteq X
$$

and the coequalizer is

$$
\coeq(f, g) = Y/(f(x) \sim g(x) \mid x \in X).
$$

To avoid confusion, we may write $\eq(f, g)$ (respectively $\coeq(f, g)$) for the equalizer (respectively coequalizer) of $f$ and $g$. In general, we say that a diagram

$$
Z \xrightarrow{i} X \xrightarrow{f} Y
$$

commutes when $fi = gi$. In this case $i$ equalizes $f$ and $g$ (but $i$ need not be the equalizer!). Similarly, a diagram

$$
X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{h} Z
$$
commutes when \( hf = hg \) and in this case, \( h \) coequalizes \( f \) and \( g \) (but \( h \) need not be the coequalizer!). For more on limits and colimits, see [23]. It is shown in [3] that \( A\text{-sets} \) contains all small limits and colimits so that we need not worry about the existence of such objects in this paper.

**Proposition 3.1.1.** i) Every surjection of \( A\text{-sets} \) is a coequalizer.

ii) Every morphism of \( A\text{-sets} \) \( g : X \to Y \) can be factored \( g = i \circ f \) where \( f \) is a surjection and \( i \) is injective.

**Proof.** i) Let \( f : X \to Y \) be a surjection and consider the pullback:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
Z & \to & X \\
p_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow \rho \\
X & \to & Y \\
p_2 \downarrow & & \downarrow
\end{array}
\]

Then \( Z \) is an \( A\text{-set} \) and \( f \) is the coequalizer \( Z \xrightarrow{p_1} X \xrightarrow{f} Y \).

ii) The map \( f : X \to g(X) \) defined by \( f(x) = g(x) \) is a surjection. If \( i : g(X) \hookrightarrow Y \) is the inclusion, clearly \( g = i \circ f \).

By Proposition 3.1.1 every \( A\text{-set} \) \( X \) can be realized as the quotient of a free \( A\text{-set} \) \( F \) as in \( R \Rightarrow F \xrightarrow{r} X \). Continuing this diagram to the left provides the definition for “double-arrow complex” which extends the usual definition of “complex” in abelian categories (see Section 4.1). Then we are able to construct projective resolutions for general \( A\text{-sets} \) allowing a more computable theory of derived functors.

Readers familiar with the language of regular and/or (Barr) exact categories will be very familiar with the previous concepts. Though the concepts defining these categories are closely related to the properties we require, it is not clear that regular categories provide the right context.

### 3.2 Functors and exactness

With short exact sequences in hand we may now turn to functors. For a functor \( F : C \to D \) and an object \( X \in C \), we sometimes write \( FX \) instead of \( F(X) \) when the role of \( F \) as a functor is clear from the context. When \( C, D \) are pointed categories, \( F \)
is based when $F(0_C) = 0_D$. The definition of admissible morphism in $A$-sets may be
defined in any pointed category with images and cokernels: a morphism $f : X \to X'$
is admissible when $X \to \text{im}(f)$ is a cokernel. We say that $F$ preserves admissibles if
$f \in \text{Hom}_C(X, X')$ is admissible means $F(f)$ is also.

To clarify why we are only concerned with admissible exact sequences, let $A = F_1[x]$ and
consider the following exact, but not admissible, sequence of $A$-sets:

$$0 \to \bigvee_{i=0}^{\infty} A_i \to A \to 0,$$

where each generator $1_i$ of $A_i$ is mapped to $x_i$. This sequence is exact even though the
cardinalities of their generator(s) differ. Exactness alone does not say very much about
objects in the sequence.

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a pointed, concrete category so that images and cokernels exist. Then we
may use the adjectives admissible, exact and short in reference to a sequence $\cdots \to X_{n+1} \to X_n \to X_{n-1} \to \cdots$ in $\mathcal{C}$.

**Definition 3.2.1.** Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a concrete, pointed category. A based functor $F : \mathcal{C} \to
A$-sets is said to be left (resp. right) exact when $0 \to X' \to X \to X'' \to 0$ is an
admissible exact sequence in $\mathcal{C}$ implies

$$0 \to F(X') \to F(X) \to F(X'') \quad (\text{resp. } F(X') \to F(X) \to F(X'') \to 0)$$

is an admissible exact sequence. In $A$-sets we are only ever concerned with admissible
short exact sequences, hence when $\mathcal{C} = A$-sets we add the additional requirement that
$F$ preserve admissibles. A functor is exact when it is both left and right exact.

**Remark 3.2.2.** For an $A$-set $Y$, we note that $\text{Hom}(Y, -) : A$-sets $\to$ Sets, is “left
exact” in the following sense. If $0 \to X' \xrightarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} X'' \to 0$ is an a.e.s. of $A$-sets, then
$0 \to \text{Hom}(Y, X') \xrightarrow{\text{Hom}(Y, f)} \text{Hom}(Y, X) \xrightarrow{\text{Hom}(Y, g)} \text{Hom}(Y, X'')$ is exact and $f_*$ is injective. However,
g_* need not be admissible. Note also that $\text{Hom}(-, Y) : A$-sets $\to$ Sets, is contravariant
left exact in the same sense.

This definition for left and right exactness is strictly for functors from $A$-sets to
itself and we will see below that it does not conflict with the definition for functors
taking values in an abelian category. Thus, although it is tempting to leave out the “preserves admissibles” property and define left (and right) exact functors strictly in terms of the exactness property of morphisms, this will only cause more repetition in the future. Within $A$-sets we will only ever be concerned with admissible exact sequences and we define exact functors accordingly.

**Remark 3.2.3.** A morphism $f : Y \to Z$ is admissible when $Y \to \text{im}(f) \to Z$ is an admissible sequence, i.e. $Y \to \text{im}(f)$ is a cokernel, hence colimit. Therefore, any concrete functor preserving colimits, or even cokernels, and injectives will preserve the admissible property. In particular, any functor which is a left adjoint which preserves injectives preserves admissibles.

Since $- \otimes X$, $X \otimes -$ do not preserve injective maps and $\text{Hom}_A(X, -)$, $\text{Hom}_A(-, X)$ do not preserve colimits, we should not expect any of these functor to preserve admissible morphisms.

**Example 3.2.4.** To see $- \otimes X$ does not preserve admissible morphisms, let $A = F_1[t]$, $X = A \lor A'/(t \sim t')$ and consider the admissible inclusion $A \to A$. Applying $- \otimes X$, the morphism $X \to X$ is no longer admissible since both generators $1, 1' \to t(= t')$.

**Example 3.2.5.** Let $A = F_1[t]$ be the free monoid in one variable, $X = A \lor A$ and $p : X \to A$ the admissible morphism defined by $p = 1 \lor 0$ (see Remark 2.2.5 about notation). Define $\alpha, \beta : X \to X$ by $\alpha = 1 \lor t$ and $\beta = 1 \lor t^2$. Then $\alpha \neq \beta \in \text{Hom}(X, X)$, but $p_*(\alpha) = p_*(\beta) = 1 \lor 0$ in $\text{Hom}(X, A)$ so that $p_* : \text{Hom}(X, X) \to \text{Hom}(X, A)$ is not admissible. That is, the fiber over the nonzero morphism $1 \lor 0$ in $\text{Hom}(X, A)$ contains multiple elements (at least $\alpha$ and $\beta$).

A similar example can be constructed to show $\text{Hom}(-, Z)$ also does not preserve admissibles. Furthermore, $\text{Hom}(-, Z)$ is a contravariant functor and we do not discuss contravariant theories in this thesis. See Section 4.4 and Chapter 5 for more information on cohomology.
3.2.1 $k$-realization

Let $k$ be a commutative ring with identity and $A$ a monoid. The $k$-realization functor $k : \text{Mon} \to \text{k-algebras}$ assigns to every monoid $A$ the free $k$-module $k[A]$ whose basis is the nonzero elements of $A$ with multiplication induced by the multiplication of $A$. This is easily extended to the $k$-realization of $A$-sets, $k : \text{A-sets} \to k[A]\text{-mod}$, for if $X$ is an $A$-set, let $k[X]$ be the free $k[A]$-module whose basis is the set of nonzero elements of $X$ and with $k[A]$-action given by the $A$-action on $X$ (together with the action of $k$). The following proposition is clear.

**Proposition 3.2.6.** The functor $k : \text{A-sets} \to k[A]\text{-mod}$ is exact in the sense that it carries admissible exact sequences to exact sequences (in the usual sense of abelian categories).

In the other direction is the forgetful, or underlying monoid (resp. $A$-set), functor $U : \text{Rings} \to \text{Mon}$ (resp. $U : k[A]\text{-mod} \to \text{A-sets}$), that simply forgets the addition of $k$. For example, using $k = \mathbb{Z}$ and $A = \mathbb{F}_1$, we have $U(k[\mathbb{F}_1]) = U(\mathbb{Z})$ is the free monoid on countably many generators (the primes) with coefficients in \{0, ±1\}.

The functors $k$ and $U$ (for both $\text{Mon}$ and $\text{A-sets}$) form an adjunction with $k$ left adjoint to $U$. That is, the map $\text{Hom}_{\text{Mon}}(A, U(R)) \to \text{Hom}_{\text{k-algebras}}(k[A], R)$ extends a monoid morphism $f$ to addition, $f(\sum_i r_i a_i) = \sum_i r_i f(a_i)$. In the opposite direction, a ring map $k[A] \to R$ simply forgets it is a homomorphism with respect to addition.

**Example 3.2.7.** Let $C$ be a monoid and let $A, B$ be $C$-monoids. Then $k[A \otimes_C B] \cong k[A] \otimes_{k[C]} k[B]$. When $C = \mathbb{F}_1$ and $B = \mathbb{F}_1[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ is the free monoid in $n$ variables, $A \otimes B = A[x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ is the free $A$-monoid on $n$ variables and $k[A[x_1, \ldots, x_n]] = k[A][x_1, \ldots, x_n]$ is the free polynomial algebra on $n$ variables with coefficients in $k[A]$.

3.3 Projective $A$-sets

Free objects are special in that every morphism whose domain is a free object is uniquely determined by where it maps the generators. Thus $\text{Hom}_A(F, X)$ is plentiful when $F, X$ are $A$-sets and $F$ is free. Projectives are a larger class of objects that which generalize
this idea. In any category an object \( P \) is *projective* when it satisfies the following universal lifting property.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\exists \varphi \\
\Downarrow
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
P \\
\Downarrow
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{g}
\begin{array}{c}
X \\
\Downarrow
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{f}
\begin{array}{c}
Y
\end{array}
\]

Given any epimorphism \( f : X \to Y \) and any morphism \( g : P \to Y \), there exists \( \varphi : P \to X \) such that \( g = f\varphi \) (here \( \varphi \) is called a *lifting* map). Equivalently, if \( X \to Y \) is a epimorphism, then so is \( \text{Hom}(P, X) \to \text{Hom}(P, Y) \).

A projective \( A \)-set may also be realized as the retract of a free object. Given a morphism \( f : X \to Y \), we say that \( Y \) is a *retract* of \( X \) when there exists a morphism \( \sigma : Y \to X \) such that \( \text{id}_Y = f\sigma \). In this case, we say that \( \sigma \) is a *section* of \( f \). Any retract of a projective \( A \)-set is projective.

**Lemma 3.3.1.** Let \( A \) be a monoid, \( e \in A \) idempotent and \( K \) a set. Then \( eA, A[K] \) and \( eA[K] \) are projective \( A \)-sets.

**Proof.** Any morphism \( f : A[K] \to Y \) is determined by the (set-theoretic) function \( f|_K : K \to Y \). To lift any surjective \( A \)-set map \( X \to Y \), simply lift \( f|_K \). In the latter case, note that \( eA \) is a retract of \( A \). Namely, the surjection \( e : A \to eA \) defined by \( 1 \mapsto e \) has a section \( \sigma : eA \to A \) which is the inclusion \( \sigma(e) = e \). Since the retract of a projective \( A \)-set is projective, the result follows. \( \square \)

**Remark 3.3.2.** (Warning) If \( e \) is an idempotent element of \( A \), the surjection \( A \to eA \) may not be admissible so we do not necessarily have \( A = eA \lor Q \) for some \( A \)-set \( Q \).

If \( P = \lor_i P_i \), then \( P \) is projective if and only if every \( P_i \) is projective. This is easily deduced from the fact that \( \text{Hom}(P, X) = \prod_i \text{Hom}(P_i, X) \) for any \( A \)-set \( X \). We can now classify projective \( A \)-sets.

**Theorem 3.3.3.** Let \( A \) be a monoid and \( P \) a projective \( A \)-set. Then \( P = \lor_{i \in I} Ae_i \) where \( e_i \in A \) is idempotent for each \( i \).
Proof. Consider the diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
P \\
\exists \varphi \\
A[P] \\
f \\
P \\
0
\end{array}
\]

where \( f[x] = x \) (see Example 2.2.6 about the notation \( A[P] \)). Then \( f \) is a surjection and the section \( \varphi \) monic since \( f \circ \varphi = \text{id}_P \). Lemma 2.2.11 shows \( P = \bigvee_{x \in P} P_x \) where \( P_x = \varphi^{-1}(\varphi(P) \cap A_x) \) and the containment \( P_x = f(\varphi(P) \cap A_x) \subseteq f(A_x) \) implies \( P_x \) is generated by \( f(1), 1 \in A_x \). The restrictions \( \varphi : P_x \to A_x \) are themselves sections of \( f \) hence \( P_x \cong A(\varphi \circ f)(1) = A\varphi(x) \). Finally, the equation \( \varphi(x) = (\varphi \circ f)(\varphi(x)) = \varphi(\varphi(x)x) = \varphi(x)^2 \) shows \( \varphi(x) \) is idempotent. \( \square \)

Corollary 3.3.4. Let \( k \) be a commutative ring and \( P \) a projective \( A \)-set. Then \( k[P] \) is a projective \( k[A] \)-module.

Proof. Given a diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
k[P] \\
N \\
f \\
M \\
0
\end{array}
\]

apply the forgetful functor \( U : k[A]-\text{mod} \to A\text{-sets} \) and use the lifting property of \( P \) to obtain the following diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
P \\
\exists \varphi \\
Uf \\
Uk[P] \\
UN \\
UM \\
0
\end{array}
\]

Then \( k[\varphi] : k[P] \to N \) provides a lifting for the original diagram. \( \square \)

Of course, the usual splitting result holds.

Proposition 3.3.5. When \( P \) is a projective \( A \)-set, any a.e.s. \( 0 \to X' \to X \to P \to 0 \) splits.

Proof. Lemma 2.2.14 shows that the sequence splits when there is a section \( \sigma : P \to X \).

Since \( P \) is projective and \( X \to P \) is surjective, we are done. \( \square \)
Proposition 3.3.6. Let \( f : A \to B \) be a morphism of monoids. If \( P \) is a projective \( A \)-set, then \( f_* P = B \otimes_A P \) is a projective \( B \)-set.

**Proof.** If \( e \in A \) is idempotent, then \( f(e) \) is idempotent in \( B \). Let \( P = \bigvee_i A e_i \) be a projective \( A \)-set with each \( e_i \) idempotent. Then

\[
B \otimes_A P = B \otimes_A (\bigvee_i A e_i) \cong \bigvee_i (B \otimes_A A e_i) \cong \bigvee_i B f(e_i)
\]

which is also projective. \( \qed \)

3.3.1 Admissibly projective \( A \)-sets

Proposition 3.3.5 shows the standard result that projective \( A \)-sets split admissible exact sequences. They are not alone.

**Definition 3.3.7.** An \( A \)-set \( Q \) is **admissibly projective** if it satisfies the lifting property

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\
\Uparrow & & \Uparrow \\
Q & \xrightarrow{g} & 0 \\
\end{array}
\]

whenever \( f \) is an admissible surjection. From Lemma 2.2.14 it is immediate that every a.e.s. \( 0 \to X \to Y \to Q \to 0 \) with \( Q \) relatively projective, splits. The converse is shown in Proposition 3.3.8.

**Proposition 3.3.8.** Let \( Q \) be an \( A \)-set such that every a.e.s. \( 0 \to X' \to X'' \to Q \to 0 \) splits. Then \( Q \) is admissibly projective.

**Proof.** Consider the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P & \xrightarrow{p_2} & Q \\
\downarrow{p_1} & & \downarrow{g} \\
0 & \xrightarrow{f} & K \\
\end{array}
\]

where \( f \) is an admissible surjection, \( K = \ker(f) \) and \( P = X \times_Y Q \) is the pullback of \( f \) and \( g \). The projection map \( p_2 : P \to Q \) is simply \( (x, q) \mapsto q \) and therefore, if \( (x, q) \neq (x', q') \) and \( p_2(x, q) = p_2(x', q') \), then \( q = q' \) and by commutativity, \( f(x) = f(x') \). Since
f is admissible, we must have $x, x' \in K$, so $q, q' \in \ker(p_2)$, showing that $p_2$ is also admissible. By assumption, the a.e.s. $0 \to \ker(p_2) \to P \xrightarrow{p_2} Q \to 0$ splits, say with section $\varphi : Q \to P$, and the composition $p_1 \varphi : Q \to X$ provides the lifting map since $fp_1 \varphi = gp_2 \varphi = g$.

Example 3.3.9. Let $A = \mathbb{F}_1[x]$ be the free monoid in one variable and set $Q = (A \lor A)/(x^n \lor 0 \sim 0 \lor x^n)$ for some $n > 1$. For any a.e.s.

$$0 \to Z \to Y \xrightarrow{f} Q \to 0$$

consider the pointed set theoretic section $\sigma : Q \to Y$ sending every nonzero element of $Q$ to the unique element in its fiber. Since $Y = Z \lor \sigma(Q)$ as pointed sets and the image of $Z$ is an $A$-subset of $Y$, if $\sigma(Q)$ is also an $A$-subset of $Y$ we will have $Y \cong Z \lor \sigma(Q)$ as $A$-sets so that the sequence splits. But $a \sigma(x) \in Z$ if and only if $ax = 0$ in $Q \cong Y/Z$. Since $Q$ is torsion free, we have $Y \cong Z \lor Q$ as an $A$-set.

Now, $Q$ is not projective since there is no lifting of the identity map $Q \to Q$ over the surjection $A \lor A \to Q$ which maps the two generators of $A \lor A$ to the two generators of $Q$.

Recall that an element $x$ of an $A$-set $X$ is a torsion element when $ax = 0$ for some nonzero $a \in A$. Note that this notion of torsion differs from that in group theory. For example, the pointed, cyclic group $G_+ = \{0, 1, x, \ldots, x^n\}$ is a torsion free $\mathbb{F}_1[x]$-set.

Proposition 3.3.10. Any torsion free $A$-set is admissibly projective.

Proof. Let $Q$ be a torsion free $A$-set. By Proposition 3.3.8, it suffices to show that any a.e.s. $0 \to Z \to Y \xrightarrow{f} Q \to 0$ splits. Let $\sigma : Q \to Y$ be the pointed set theoretic section of $f$. When $Q$ is torsion free, $0 \neq x \in Q$ and $0 \neq a \in A$, we have $f(a \sigma(x)) = af(\sigma(x)) = ax \neq 0$ so that $a \sigma(x)$ is the unique element in the fiber of $ax$, i.e. $\sigma(ax)$. Hence $\sigma$ is an $A$-set morphism and $Q$ is an $A$-subset of $Y$.

Note that Proposition 3.3.10 is also a consequence of Proposition 4.4.1. Also, the converse to Proposition 3.3.10 is certainly not true. Indeed, every projective $A$-set is admissibly projective and when $A$ has zero divisors, any free $A$-set provides a counterexample.
3.3.2 Rank

Let $G$ be an abelian group and $G_+$ the associated monoid (see Example 2.1.1). As we noted in Example 2.2.3, every $G_+$-set can be written as $X = \bigvee_{i \in I} X_i$, $I$ an indexing set, where each $X_i = (G/H_i)_+$ is a (pointed) quotient of $G$ by a subgroup $H_i$. In this situation the cardinality of $I$ is well defined and we may define the rank of a $G_+$-set as the cardinality of $I$. Of course in classical group theory, the $X_i$ are called the orbits of $X$ and $|I| = |X/G|$ where $X/G$ is the quotient $G$-set obtained by considering “$X$ modulo the action of $G$.” In the case of monoids, the basepoint will always be its own orbit. If $G$ is finite, Burnside’s Lemma provides the formula

$$|X/G| = \frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{g \in G} |X^g|$$

where $X^g = \{x \in X \mid gx = x\}$. This formula can be useful when $G$ is a finite abelian group and may not be as helpful in the study of finitely generated abelian groups.

The rank of an $A$-set may now be defined analogously to that of modules over $R$, a commutative ring. Recall that the group completion of a cancellative monoid $A$ is the monoid $A_0$ obtained by inverting all non-zero elements of $A$. When $A$ is non-cancellative, then $ab = ac$ for some $a,b,c \in A$ and $b/1 = c/1 \in A[\frac{1}{a}]$. Borrowing notation from commutative algebra again, we may use the notation $\text{Quot}(A)$ for $A_0$. If $p \in \text{MSpec}(A)$, then $A/p$ has no zero-divisors but $A/p \to \text{Quot}(A/p)$ need not be injective. However, the monoid $G(p) = \text{Quot}(A/p)$ is nonetheless a pointed (abelian) group called the residue group at $p$.

With these definitions in hand, we are able to define the rank of a general $A$-set. Let $A$ be a monoid and $X$ a finitely generated $A$-set. The rank of $X$ over $A$ is the function $\text{rk} : \text{MSpec}(A) \to \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$ defined by

$$\text{rk}_p X = \text{rk}_{G(p)}(X \otimes_A G(p))$$

where $G(p) = \text{Quot}(A/p)$ is the residue group at the prime $p$.

**Lemma 3.3.11.** If $e$ is an idempotent element of $A$, then

$$\text{rk}_p(eA) = \begin{cases} 0 & e \in p \\
1 & e \not\in p \end{cases}$$
Proof. Since $eA \otimes G(p) = eA \otimes (A/p)_p \cong (eA/e)p$, the prime $p$ contains $e$ if and only if $eA \otimes G(p) = 0$. Moreover, if $p$ does not contain $e$, then $e = 1$ in $G(p)$ so that $eA \otimes G(p) \cong G(p)$. \qed

Remark 3.3.12. Unlike commutative rings, non-trivial idempotent elements do not disconnect $\text{MSpec}(A)$. This should be clear since all monoids are local and a disconnected spectrum requires at least two maximal ideals. It is a standard result in commutative ring theory that for a commutative ring $R$, $\text{Spec}(R)$ is connected if and only if $R$ contains only the trivial idempotents. When $R$ contains non-trivial idempotents and $\text{Spec}(R)$ is disconnected, the underlying monoid has $\text{MSpec}(U(R))$ connected. It is also known that when $P$ is a projective $R$-module, the rank function for $P$ is locally constant. However, since the connected components of $\text{Spec}(R)$ come together to form the connected topological space $\text{MSpec}(U(R))$, we should not expect the rank function for the $U(R)$-set $U(P)$ to be locally (in fact, globally) constant.

A simple example: $A = F_1[x, y]/(x^2 = x, y^2 = y)$ consists of only idempotents and has $\text{MSpec}(A) = \{(0), (x), (y), (x, y)\}$. Then the projective $A$-set $X = Ax = \{0, x, xy\}$ has $\text{rk}_0 X = \text{rk}_y X = 1$ and $\text{rk}_x X = \text{rk}_{x,y} X = 0$.

Let $A$ be a monoid and $E \subseteq A$ the submonoid of idempotent elements of $A$. Define a relation $\leq$ on $E$ by $e \leq f$ whenever $ef = e$. Then $\leq$ is a partial order, and $E$ is a poset, since:

i) $e \leq e$ since $e^2 = e$ (reflexive)

ii) $e \leq f$ and $f \leq e$ implies $e = f$ since $e = ef = fe = f$ (antisymmetric)

iii) $e \leq f$ and $f \leq h$ implies $e \leq h$ since $eh = (ef)h = e(fh) = ef = e$ (transitive)

In fact, $E$ is a semi-lattice where the meet, or greatest lower bound, of $e$ and $f$ is $e \wedge f = ef$. Also, $E$ has $1$ as its greatest element and $0$ as its least element.

Lemma 3.3.13. Let $e, f \neq 1$ be idempotent elements of $A$ and $p$ the unique prime ideal maximal with respect to the condition $f \notin p$. Then $e \notin p$ if and only if $e \geq f$.

Proof. First, assume $e \geq f$ and suppose that $e \in p$. It immediately follows that $ef = f \in p$, a contradiction.
For the converse, we prove the contrapositive, namely if \( e \nless f \) then \( e \in p \). Notice that \( p \) may be realized as the contraction of the maximal ideal in the map \( A \to A_f \). Also note that \( e \in p \) when \( e \) is not a unit of \( A_f \), equivalently \( f \neq ae \) for any \( a \in A \). To make matters worse, suppose (in order to obtain a contradiction) that \( f = ae \) for some \( a \in A \). Then \( ae \) is an idempotent and \( ef = e( ae ) = ae = f \) implies \( f \leq e \). Hence, we must have \( f \neq ae \) so that \( e \in p \).

**Theorem 3.3.14.** Let \( P, Q \) be finitely generated projective \( A \)-sets. Then \( P \cong Q \) if and only if \( \text{rk}_p(P) = \text{rk}_p(Q) \) for every \( p \in \text{MSpec}(A) \).

**Proof.** If \( P \cong Q \), it is clear that \( \text{rk}_p(P) = \text{rk}_p(Q) \) for every \( p \).

Now assume \( \text{rk}_pP = \text{rk}_pQ \) for every prime \( p \). By Theorem 3.3.3, \( P = \bigvee_{i=1}^n Ae_i \) and we will show that for each distinct idempotent generator \( e \), there is a prime \( p \subseteq A \) such that \( \text{rk}_p(P) \) is the number of summands of \( P \) generated by all \( e_i \geq e \). We may assume each \( e_i \) is distinct and ordered so that \( j > i \) means \( e_i \nless e_j \). For each \( 1 \leq i \leq n \), let \( p_i \) be the prime ideal of \( A \) maximal with respect to the condition \( e_i \nless p_i \) so that by Lemma 3.3.13, \( j > i \) implies \( e_j \in p_i \) and hence, \( \text{rk}_{p_i}(Ae_j) = 0 \).

Using Lemma 3.3.11, \( k_1 = \text{rk}_{p_1}(P) = \text{rk}_{p_1}(Q) \) is the number of \( Ae_1 \) summands in \( P \) (and hence \( Q \)). Let \( P_1 = P \) and for \( i > 1 \), inductively define \( P_i = P_{i-1}/(\bigvee_{i=1}^k Ae_i) \). Making similar definitions for \( Q_i \), we see that \( k_i = \text{rk}_{p_i}(P_i) = \text{rk}_{p_i}(Q_i) \) is the number of \( Ae_i \) summands in both \( P \) and \( Q \). Therefore, \( P \cong Q \). 

**3.3.3 Observations on \( K_0, G_0 \) and \( K_1 \)**

With a good understanding of projective sets in hand, we show a few basic \( K \)-theory results if only to become more familiar with \( A \)-sets. Given any (not necessarily commutative or pointed) monoid \( M \), we construct the group completion of \( M \) as follows. First consider the cartesian product \( M \times M \) together with coordinate-wise addition:

\[
(m_1, m_2) + (m'_1, m'_2) = (m_1 + m'_1, m_2 + m'_2).
\]

Next define an equivalence relation \( \sim \) on \( M \times M \) by declaring \( (m_1, m_2) \sim (m'_1, m'_2) \) whenever there exists \( n \in M \) such that \( m_1 + m'_2 + n = m_2 + m'_1 + n \). This equivalence
relation is compatible with the additive structure. It is easy to see that elements of the form \((m, m)\) are identity elements and \((m, m')\) is the inverse of \((m', m)\).

The functor \(K_0 : \text{Mon}_* \to \text{Ab}\) assigns to each monoid \(A\) the abelian group \(K_0(A)\), called the Grothendieck group, defined to be the group completion of the monoid whose elements are the isomorphism classes of finitely generated, projective \(A\)-sets, with binary operation given by the wedge sum \(\vee\).

Theorem 3.3.14 shows that isomorphism classes of projective \(A\)-sets are completely determined by the number of summands generated by each idempotent of \(A\). The following proposition shows that \(K_0(A)\) also has a multiplicative structure given by \(\otimes\) so that it is actually a commutative ring with identity.

**Proposition 3.3.15.** If \(P\) and \(Q\) are projective \(A\)-sets, so is \(P \otimes_A Q\).

**Proof.** Note that when \(e, f \in A\) are idempotent their product \(ef\) is also and \(Ae \otimes Af \cong Ae f\). Using Theorem 3.3.3 and Proposition 2.3.3 we have

\[
P \otimes Q = \bigvee_{i \in I} Ae_i \otimes \bigvee_{j \in J} Af_j \cong \bigvee_{i,j \in I \times J} Ae_i \otimes Af_j \cong \bigvee_{i,j \in I \times J} Ae_i f_j
\]

which proves the claim. \(\square\)

The next theorem summarizes the previous remarks.

**Theorem 3.3.16.** If \(A\) is a monoid, then \(K_0(A)\) is a commutative ring with addition given by \(\vee\) and multiplication given by \(\otimes\). The additive identity is the trivial projective set 0 and the multiplicative identity is the free rank one set. Moreover, there is a ring isomorphism \(K_0(A) \cong \mathbb{Z}[E]\) where \(E = E_A\) is the submonoid of \(A\) generated by all the idempotent elements.

**Proof.** Recall that \(\mathbb{Z}[E]\) is the monoid ring of \(E\). By Theorems 3.3.3 and 3.3.14, every projective \(A\)-set \(P = \bigvee_{i \in I} Ae_i\) is determined, up to isomorphism, by the \(e_i\). Therefore, the \(A\)-sets \(Ae\), where \(e \in A\) is idempotent, form a generating set for \(K_0(A)\) when considered as an abelian group. The function \(f : K_0(A) \to \mathbb{Z}[E]\) defined on the generators by \(Ae \mapsto e\) extends linearly to a group homomorphism \(\bigvee_{i \in I} Ae_i \mapsto \sum_{i \in I} e_i\). It is clearly multiplicative, hence a ring homomorphism, and surjective. For injectivity,
after combining coefficients in

\[ f(P) = f(\bigvee_{i \in I} A e_i) = \sum_{i \in I} e_i, \]

we have \( f(P) = 0 \) if and only if \( e_i = 0 \) for all \( i \in I \). \qedhere

**Example 3.3.17.** The previous theorem implies that every monoid \( A \) with only the trivial idempotents (0 and 1) has \( K_0(A) = \mathbb{Z} \). In fact, in this case, every projective \( A \)-set is free. For instance, every \( \mathbb{F}_1 \)-set \( X \) is free and is completely determined by its cardinality \( |X| = \text{rk}_0(X) + 1 \).

Let \( f : A \to B \) be a monoid morphism. Recall that Proposition 3.3.6 shows that the push-forward \( f_* P \) is a projective \( B \)-set when \( P \) is a projective \( A \)-set. It is then clear that \( f \) induces a ring homomorphism \( f_* : K_0(A) \to K_0(B) \). Since we have the isomorphism \( K_0(A) \cong \mathbb{Z}[E_A] \) for every monoid, the following proposition is clear.

**Proposition 3.3.18.** Let \( f : A \to B \) be a monoid morphism. If \( f|_{E_A} : E_A \to E_B \) is an isomorphism, then so is \( f_* : K_0(A) \to K_0(B) \).

Perhaps more interesting than \( K_0 \) is \( G_0 \). The definition of \( K_0 \) for finitely generated \( A \)-sets is extended from that of abelian categories (see [24, II.6.2]). We define the Grothendieck group \( G_0(A) \) of \( A \)-sets to be the abelian group having one generator \([X]\) for each finitely generated \( A \)-set \( X \), modulo one relation \([X] = [X'] + [X'']\) for every admissible exact sequence \( 0 \to X' \to X \to X'' \to 0 \) (see [3, Section 5]). As with abelian categories, we immediately having the following identities:

i) \( 0 \to X \to X \to 0 \) implies \([0] = 0\), that is, the generator given by the trivial \( A \)-set is the (additive) identity of \( G_0(A) \).

ii) If \( X \cong X' \), then \([X] = [X']\) from the a.e.s. \( 0 \to X \to X' \to 0 \).

iii) \([X \lor X'] = [X] + [X']\) from the a.e.s. \( 0 \to X \to X \lor X' \to X' \to 0 \).

**Example 3.3.19.** When \( A = \mathbb{F}_1 \), any finitely generated \( \mathbb{F}_1 \)-set is simply a finite (pointed) set and two finite sets \( X, X' \) are isomorphic if and only if \( |X| = |X'| \). The a.e.s. \( 0 \to \mathbb{F}_1 \to \lor^1_1 \mathbb{F}_1 \to \lor^{n-1}_1 \mathbb{F}_1 \to 0 \) shows that \([\mathbb{F}_1]\) generates \( G_0(\mathbb{F}_1) \). Consequently, \( G_0(\mathbb{F}_1) \cong \mathbb{Z} \).
Example 3.3.20. (Burnside Ring) Let $A = G_+$ be the pointed cyclic group of order $n$. Every $G$-set is isomorphic to a wedge sum of (pointed) of cosets $(G/H)_+$ and two cosets $G/H$, $G/H'$ are isomorphic if and only if $H = H'$. Thus, the relations shown above encompass all the relations of $G_0(A)$. If $H_1, \ldots, H_m$ lists all possible subgroups of $G$, including $G$ itself, we have $G_0(A) = \bigoplus_{i=1}^m \mathbb{Z}[G/H_i]$. In particular, when $n = p$ is prime, $G_0(A) = \mathbb{Z}$.

Example 3.3.21. Let $A = F_1[t]$ be the free monoid in one variable and $X$ a finitely generated $A$-set with generators $x_1, \ldots, x_n$. For every $x_i$, we have one of the following possibilities for $Ax_i$:

i) it is free,

ii) it is isomorphic to $A/At^k$ for some $n > 0$,

iii) there is a relation $ax_i = a'x_j$ for some $a, a' \in A$ and generator $x_j$ of $X$.

For (ii), the a.e.s. $0 \to A \xrightarrow{t^k} A \to A/At^k \to 0$ shows that $[A/At^k] = 0$. Now suppose we are in case (iii) and $i \neq j$. Let $X_i \subseteq X$ be the $A$-subset generated by $x_1, \ldots, x_{i-1}, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_n$. We have an a.e.s. $0 \to X_i \hookrightarrow X \to A/At^k \to 0$ for some $k > 1$ depending on $a$; thus $[X] = [X_i]$. Repeating this process if necessary, we can remove all generators sharing a relation with second, distinct generator.

In case (iii) and when $i = j$, each generator $x_i$ satisfying a relation of the form $ax_i = a'x_i$ generates its own summand, so we may restrict our attention to $A$-sets $X$ generated by a single element of this form. Here $X \cong A/(t^n = t^m)$ for some $n \geq m$. When $m > 0$, the a.e.s.

$$0 \to A/(t^n - m = 1) \xrightarrow{t^m} X \to A/At^m \to 0$$

shows $[X] = [A/(t^n - m = 1)]$. Then $[X] = [C_{n-m}]$ is equivalent to the pointed cyclic group of order $n - m$.

Thus, the only non-trivial generators of $G_0(A)$ are $[C_n]$, $n \geq 1$, and $[A]$. We now show there are no relations shared between these generators.

Recall that an $A$-set is torsion free when it has no zero-divisors. Each $C_n$ is torsion free, hence admissibly projective by Proposition 3.3.10, and $A$ is projective. Therefore, every a.e.s. $0 \to Y' \to Y \to Y'' \to 0$ with $Y'' = C_n$ or $A$, splits and provides no
nontrivial relations. Moreover, there are no morphisms \( C_n \to A \) and no injective \( A \)-set morphisms of the form \( A \to C_n \) or \( C_n \to C_m \), for any \( n, m > 0 \) and \( n \neq m \), so that \( A \) and the \( C_n \) do not admit any admissible sequences in the \( Y', Y \) positions. (To see there are no injective maps \( f : C_n \to C_m \) when \( n \neq m \), the relation \( t^j = f(1) = f(t^n) = t^n f(1) = t^{n+j} \) in \( C_m \) implies \( n = km \) for some \( k \geq 1 \). Then \( f \) can be injective only when \( k = 1 \).)

Therefore the \([C_n], n > 0\), are non-trivial generators and

\[
G_0(A) \cong \mathbb{Z}[A] \bigoplus \left( \bigoplus_{i=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{Z}[C_n] \right)
\]

is an infinitely generated, free abelian group! This varies greatly from the analogous result in commutative ring theory result that \( G_0(k[t]) \cong \mathbb{Z} \) where \( k[t] \) is the polynomial ring in one variable with coefficients in a field \( k \). We can attribute this oddity of monoids once again to the lack of cancellation.

Let \( A, B \) be noetherian monoids. Recall that for a functor \( F : A\text{-sets} \to B\text{-sets} \) to be exact, it must preserve admissible morphisms. Every exact functor \( F \) induces a group homomorphism \( G_0(A) \to G_0(B) \). If \( A \) is a \( B \)-monoid via the monoid map \( f : B \to A \), it is immediate that \( f^* \) is always exact.

Before proceeding we recall the following definitions. A filtration for an \( A \)-set \( X \) is a descending sequence of \( A \)-sets \( 0 = X_0 \subseteq \cdots \subseteq X_1 \subseteq X_0 = X \). For convenience, we may write the filtration as \( \{X_i\}_{i=1}^{n} \). A refinement of \( \{X_i\} \) is a filtration \( \{X'_i\} \) such that every \( X_i \) occurs as one of the \( X'_j \). Note that Lemma 3.3.22 (i) and (ii) are modifications of Zassenhaus’ Lemma and the Schneider Refinement Theorem respectively, while (iii) and Theorem 3.3.23 modify [24, II.6.3].

**Lemma 3.3.22.** i) If \( X_2 \subseteq X_1, X'_2 \subseteq X'_1 \) are \( A \)-subsets of an \( A \)-set \( X \), then

\[
\frac{(X_1 \cap X'_1) \cup X_2}{(X_1 \cap X'_2) \cup X_2} \cong \frac{(X_1 \cap X'_1) \cup X'_2}{(X_2 \cap X'_1) \cup X'_2}.
\]

ii) Let \( \{X_i\}_{i=1}^{n} \) and \( \{X'_j\}_{j=1}^{m} \) be filtrations of an \( A \)-set \( X \). Then there are filtrations \( \{Y_{i,j}\} \) and \( \{Y'_{i,j}\} \) of \( X \) such that the collections \( \{Y_{i,j}/Y_{i,j+1}\} \) and \( \{Y'_{i,j}/Y'_{i,j+1}\} \) are equivalent.
iii) With notation as in (ii), we have \([X] = \sum_{i=1}^{n-1}[X_i/X_{i+1}] = \sum_{j=1}^{m-1}[X'_j/X'_{j+1}]\) in \(G_0(A)\).

**Proof.** i) Upon inspection, we see that both sides are equivalent to 

\[
(X_1 \cap X'_1)/(X_1 \cap X'_2) \cup (X'_1 \cap X_2).
\]

ii) Set \(Y_{i,j} = (X_i \cap X'_j) \cup X_{i+1}\) and \(Y'_{j,i} = (X_i \cap X'_j) \cup X'_{j+1}\) and notice that \(\{Y_{i,j}\}\) and \(\{Y'_{j,i}\}\) form filtrations when ordered lexicographically. Moreover, \(\{Y_{i,j}\}\) is a refinement of \(\{X_i\}\), and \(\{Y'_{j,i}\}\) is a refinement of \(\{X'_j\}\), since \(X_i = Y_{i,1}\) and \(X'_j = Y'_{j,1}\). Finally, (i) shows that \(Y_{i,j}/Y_{i,j+1} \cong Y'_{j,i}/Y'_{j,i+1}\) so that the collections \(\{Y_{i,j}/Y_{i,j+1}\}\) and \(\{Y'_{j,i}/Y'_{j,i+1}\}\) are equivalent.

iii) We show \(\sum_{i=1}^{n-1}[X_i/X_{i+1}] = \sum_{k=1}^{t-1}[Z_i/Z_{i+1}]\) where \(\{Z_k\}_{k=1}^t\) is any refinement of \(\{X_i\}\). Then, applying (ii) gives 

\[
\sum [X_i/X_{i+1}] = \sum [Y_{i,j}/Y_{i,j+1}] = \sum [Y'_{j,i}/Y'_{j,i+1}] = \sum [X'_j/X'_{j+1}].
\]

To show the invariance of the initial sum under refinement, we need only consider a refinement which adds a single term, namely \(X_{i+1} \subseteq Z \subseteq X_i\) for some \(1 \leq i \leq n - 1\). This invariance follows immediately from the a.e.s. \(0 \to Z/X_{i+1} \to X_i/X_{i+1} \to X_i/Z \to 0\) which shows \([X_i/X_{i+1}] = [X_i/Z] + [Z/X_{i+1}]\). \(\square\)

**Theorem 3.3.23.** (Devissage) Let \(A\) be a monoid and \(I \subseteq A\) a nilpotent ideal, i.e. \(I^n = 0\) for some \(n \geq 1\). Then the projection \(\pi : A \to A/I\) induces an isomorphism \(\pi^* : G_0(A/I) \to G_0(A)\).

**Proof.** Since \(I\) is nilpotent, \(\{I^iX\}_{i=0}^n\) is a filtration of \(X\) which refines the trivial filtration \(\{0, X\}\). Then applying Lemma 3.3.22(iii) we obtain \([X] = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1}[I^iX/I^{i+1}X]\) which shows \(\pi^*\) is surjective. We now show that the map \(\varphi : G_0(A) \to G_0(A/I)\) given by \([X] \mapsto \sum_{i=0}^{n-1}[I^iX/I^{i+1}X]\) is a well defined inverse for \(\pi^*\).

The fact that the compositions \(\pi^*\varphi\) and \(\varphi\pi^*\) are identity morphisms is clear from Lemma 3.3.22(iii). We have that \(\varphi\) defines a group homomorphism on the free abelian group generated by the isomorphism classes of finitely generated \(A\)-sets. To show that \(\varphi\) descends to a homomorphism on \(G_0(A)\), it suffices to show that for every a.e.s.
Then by Example 3.3.19, we have \( G \xrightarrow{\pi} \text{map} \) when Example 3.3.24.

0 → \( X' \xrightarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} X'' \) → 0 of \( A \)-sets providing a relation \([X] = [X'] + [X'']\) on \( G_0(A) \), we must have \( \varphi[X] = \varphi[X'] + \varphi[X''] \) in \( G_0(A/I) \).

Write \( \{X_j\}_{j=0}^{2n+2} \) for the filtration

\[ \{0 = f(I^n X'), \ldots, f(I X'), f(X') = g^{-1}(I^n X''), \ldots, g^{-1}(I X''), g^{-1}(X'') = X\} \]

of \( X \). First notice that for \( n + 1 \leq j \leq 2n + 1 \), \( X_j/X_{j+1} \cong I^j X'/I^{j+1} X' \) is an \( A/I \)-set. For the initial half of the filtration, it is clear that \( X' \cup I^i X' \subseteq g^{-1}(X'') \).

To see the opposite containment, let \( ix'' \neq 0 \) be in \( I^i X'' \), \( i \in I^i \), and \( x = g^{-1}(ix'') \) be the unique element in the fiber over \( ix'' \) (\( g \) is admissible). Then \( x'' \neq 0 \) and \( g(ig^{-1}(x'')) = ix'' \), so it must be that \( x = ig^{-1}(x'') \in I^i X \). Hence, for \( 0 \leq j \leq n - 1 \), each \( g^{-1}(I^j X'')/g^{-1}(I^{j+1} X'') \cong I^j X''/I^{j+1} X'' \) is an \( A/I \)-set so \( \sum_{j=0}^{2n} [X_j/X_{j+1}] \) is an element in \( G_0(A/I) \). Of course, \( X_n/X_{n+1} = 0 \) is an \( A/I \)-set. By appealing to Lemma 3.3.22(iii) once more we obtain the first equality in our desired result.

\[ \varphi[X] = \sum_{j=0}^{2n} [X_j/X_{j+1}] = \sum_{j=n+1}^{2n+1} [X_j/X_{j+1}] + 0 + \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} [X_j/X_{j+1}] = \varphi[X'] + \varphi[X''] \]

\( \square \)

**Example 3.3.24.** When \( A = \mathbb{F}_1[x]/(x^n) \), the ideal generated by \( x \) is nilpotent so the map \( \pi : A \rightarrow A/(x) \cong \mathbb{F}_1 \) induces an isomorphism \( G_0(A) \cong G_0(\mathbb{F}_1) \) by Theorem 3.3.23.

By Example 3.3.19, we have \( G_0(A) \cong \mathbb{Z} \).

For a ring \( R \), the group \( K_1(R) \) may be defined to be the abelianization of the *infinite linear group* \( GL(R) \). The group \( GL_n(R) \) consists of all linear automorphisms of \( \bigoplus_{i=1}^n R \) and there is an inclusion \( GL_n(R) \hookrightarrow GL_{n+1}(R) \) defined by

\[ g \mapsto \left( \begin{array}{cc} g & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) . \]

Then \( GL(R) \) is union of the \( GL_n(R) \). Let \( A \) be a monoid and \( X \) the free \( A \)-set on \( n \) generators; then \( GL_n(A) = \text{Aut}(X) \) is easily computable. An \( A \)-set morphism \( A \rightarrow A \) is completely determined by the image of 1 and is invertible if and only if \( 1 \mapsto u \) where \( u \in A^\times \) is a unit. From this it easily follows that \( GL_n(A) \cong (\prod_{i=1}^n A^\times) \times \Sigma_n \) where \( \Sigma_n \) is the symmetric group of \( n \) elements. We then realize \( GL_n(A) \) as the set of all \( n \times n \)
matrices having only one non-zero entry in each row and column with coefficients in $A^\times$. The next result then follows from [24, IV.1.27, 4.10.1].

**Proposition 3.3.25.** For any monoid $A$, we have $K_1(A) \cong A^\times \times \mathbb{Z}_2$.

### 3.4 Model categories

When $A = \mathbb{F}_1$, the category $A\text{-sets}$ is equivalent to $\text{Sets}_*$, the category of pointed sets. Thus, when looking for a homological theory for $A\text{-sets}$, investigating the well known homotopy theory associated to $\text{Sets}_*$ is a good place to start. In [20] Quillen provided the theory of homotopical algebra which axiomatized the homotopy theory of topological spaces. Once a category meets the stated requirements, a homotopy theory is immediate, providing a theory of long exact sequences and derived functors. It is possible for a category to have multiple homotopy theories associated to it each with its own corresponding model structure (defined below).

It is not always clear what model structure will provide the “best” homotopy theory, so we investigate the most natural model structure and the invariants, i.e. homotopy groups and derived functors, it provides. Luckily, the definition of the standard (Kan) model structure on $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}_*$ and the projective model structure on $\text{Ch}_{\geq 0}(R)$ can be made equally well for $A\text{-sets}$. This does not mean, a priori, the (projective) model structure will be the most useful, but we will see that it provides invariants similar to what we expect.

This section provides the most basic definitions we require as a reference. In the next section we review the category of simplicial sets and the standard model structure defined there. Throughout, one may also use the categories $\text{Ch}(R)$ and $\text{Top}$ to guide their intuition. Interested readers are directed to [20] and [15] for a more complete introduction to the theory of model categories.

For a category $\mathcal{C}$, let $\text{Map}\mathcal{C}$ denote the collection of all morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$ which we may consider a category by defining morphisms to be commutative squares. A *functorial factorization* is an ordered pair of functors $(\alpha, \beta) : \text{Map}\mathcal{C} \to \text{Map}\mathcal{C}$ such that $f = \beta(f) \circ \alpha(f)$ for all $f$ in $\text{Map}\mathcal{C}$. 
Definition 3.4.1. A model structure on a category $C$ consists of three subcategories of $\text{Map}C$ called weak equivalences ($\sim$), cofibrations ($\rightarrow$) and fibrations ($\rightarrow$), and two functorial factorizations $(\alpha, \beta)$ and $(\gamma, \delta)$ satisfying the following properties:

i) If $gf$ is a composition of morphisms in $C$ and any two of $f$, $g$ or $gf$ are weak equivalences, then so is the third.

ii) If $f$ and $g$ are morphisms such that $f$ is a retract of $g$ and $g$ is a weak equivalence (resp. cofibration, resp. fibration), then so is $f$.

iii) Call a morphism that is both a cofibration (resp. fibration) and weak equivalence a trivial cofibration (resp. trivial fibration). In the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \longrightarrow & B \\
\downarrow^{f} & & \downarrow^{g} \\
C & \longleftarrow & D \\
\end{array}
$$

the morphism $h$ exists when $f$ is a trivial cofibration and $g$ is a fibration or, $g$ is a trivial cofibration and $f$ is a fibration. In the former case we say that trivial cofibrations have the left lifting property (LLP) with respect to fibrations and, in the latter case, trivial fibrations have the right lifting property (RLP) with respect to cofibrations. The morphism $h$ is called a lift.

iv) For any morphism $f$, $\alpha(f)$ is a trivial cofibration, $\beta(f)$ is a fibration, $\gamma(f)$ is a cofibration and $\delta(f)$ is a trivial cofibration.

A model category is a category $C$ that is both complete and cocomplete, together with a model structure.

This is the definition for model structure (and category) given by Hovey. As noted in [15], this definition differs from that of [20] since Quillen merely required the existence of factorizations, not that they be functorial. Also, Quillen does not require the category to be (co)complete, but that it need only contain all finite limits and colimits. It is shown in [3] that $A$-sets is both complete and cocomplete so this distinction is inconsequential. The functorial factorizations are generally difficult to write down explicitly and to use for computations. Since our primary goal is to find a computable homological theory, this distinction is also unimportant to us.
Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a model category with zero object $0$. We say that an object $C$ of $\mathcal{C}$ is fibrant when $C \twoheadrightarrow 0$ is a fibration and $C$ is cofibrant when $0 \hookrightarrow C$ is a cofibration. If $C$ is any object, we can factor the (not necessarily cofibrant) morphism $0 \to C$ into $0 \hookrightarrow X \sim C$ where the object $X$ is cofibrant and weak equivalent to $C$. Similarly, we may factor the (not necessarily fibrant) morphism $C \to 0$ into $C \sim Y \to 0$ so that $Y$ is fibrant and weak equivalent to $C$. The object $X$ (resp. $Y$) is called a cofibrant replacement (resp. fibrant replacement) for $C$. Let $\mathcal{C}_c$ and $\mathcal{C}_f$ denote the full subcategories of $\mathcal{C}$ whose objects are the cofibrant and fibrant objects in $\mathcal{C}$ respectively. Given the functorial nature of the factorizations, there are functors $Q : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}_c$ and $R : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}_f$ such that $QC$, respectively $RC$, is cofibrant, respectively fibrant, replacement for $C$.

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be any category and $S$ a collection of morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$. The localization of $\mathcal{C}$ with respect to $S$ is a category $S^{-1}\mathcal{C}$ together with a functor $q : \mathcal{C} \to S^{-1}\mathcal{C}$ satisfying:

i) $q(s)$ is an isomorphism for every $s \in S$.

ii) Any functor $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ such that $F(s)$ is an isomorphism for every $s \in S$ factors through $q$ uniquely.

This definition of localization is exactly analogous to that of rings and monoids (Section 2.4) together with the universal property. Now let $\mathcal{C}$ be a model category. The localization of $\mathcal{C}$ at the collection of weak equivalences is the homotopy category $\text{Ho}\mathcal{C}$ of $\mathcal{C}$. Thus, $\text{Ho}\mathcal{C}$ is a category where every weak equivalence becomes an isomorphism. In particular every object $C$ is isomorphic to its functorial cofibrant and fibrant replacements. It is shown in [15, 1.2.10], and a consequence of [23, 10.3.7], that whenever $\mathcal{C}$ is a model category, $\text{Ho}\mathcal{C}$ exists and is itself a category. The notation $[A, B] = \text{Hom}_{\text{Ho}\mathcal{C}}(A, B)$ is standard.

The following definitions are provided by [20, I.4]. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a model category and $\gamma : C \to C'$ and $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ be functors. Should it exist, the left derived functor $L_\gamma F$ of $F$ with respect to $\gamma$ is the functor forming the diagram:

![Diagram](image)

together with a natural transformation $\varepsilon : L_\gamma F \circ \gamma \to F$ which satisfies the following
universal property. Given any functor $G : C' \rightarrow D$ and natural transformation $\eta : G \circ \gamma \rightarrow F$, there is a unique natural transformation $\Theta : G \rightarrow L_\gamma F$ making the following diagram commute.

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
G \circ \gamma & \xrightarrow{\eta} & F \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
L_\gamma F \circ \gamma & \xleftarrow{\epsilon} & F
\end{array}
$$

For the special case when $\gamma$ is the localization $C \rightarrow \text{Ho} C$, we write $LF$ for the left derived functor. When $LF$ exists, $F$ maps weak equivalent objects of $C$ to isomorphic objects in $D$. If $D$ is a model category, the total left derived functor, also written $LF$, is the functor making the following diagram commute.

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{F} & D \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{Ho} C & \xrightarrow{LF} & \text{Ho} D
\end{array}
$$

For the total left derived functor to exist, $F$ must map weak equivalences of $C$ to weak equivalences of $D$. Hence, if $C$ is any object of $C$, we are free to compute $LF(C)$ using any object weak equivalent to $C$, e.g. a cofibrant replacement $QC$. Notice that the use of the notation $LF$ should be clear from the context as the total left derived functor takes values in the homotopy category associated to a model category, rather than the (model) category itself. It is shown in [20, I.4.2, I.4.4] that when $F$ carries weak equivalences in $C$ to:

i) isomorphisms in $D$, the left derived functor $L_\gamma F$ exists.

ii) weak equivalences in $D$, the total left derived functor $LF : \text{Ho} C \rightarrow \text{Ho} D$ exists.

Similar definitions can be made for right/total right derived functors; see [20, I.4].

Given two model categories $C$ and $D$, it is natural to ask when their homotopy categories are equivalent. This motivates the following definitions. A functor $F : C \rightarrow D$ is a left Quillen functor when it is a left adjoint and preserves cofibrations and trivial cofibrations. A functor $G : D \rightarrow C$ is a right Quillen functor when it is a right adjoint and preserves fibrations and trivial fibrations. Now suppose $F, G$ form an adjunction with $F$ left adjoint to $G$. It is a Quillen adjunction when $F$ is a left Quillen functor. It is shown in [15, 1.3.4] that the adjunction $F, G$ is a Quillen adjunction if and only if $G$
is a right Quillen functor.

3.4.1 Simplicial sets

It would be helpful to find a homological theory for \( A\text{-sets} \) that does not require the use of simplicial \( A\text{-sets} \). Simplicial objects are generally cumbersome to work with and, in categories whose objects have less structure than groups, difficult to compute with. The model structure on simplicial \( A\text{-sets} \) is a direct generalization of that on \( \Delta^{op}\text{Sets} \). Before we introduce a new notion of “chain complex” we will present a homotopy theory for simplicial \( A\text{-sets} \) provided by Quillen’s homotopical algebra (see [20]). Here we recall the basic definitions and notation conventions before defining the standard model structure on \( \Delta^{op}\text{Sets} \).

Let \( \Delta \) denote the category whose objects are the ordered sets

\[
[n] = \{0 < 1 < \cdots < n - 1 < n\}
\]

and whose morphisms are order preserving set maps. Of particular importance are the face maps \( \varepsilon_i : [n - 1] \to [n] \) and degeneracy maps \( \eta_i : [n + 1] \to [n] \), \( 0 \leq i \leq n \), defined by

\[
\varepsilon_i(j) = \begin{cases} j & \text{if } j < i, \\ j + 1 & \text{if } j \geq i \end{cases}
\]

\[
\eta_i(j) = \begin{cases} j & \text{if } j \leq i, \\ j - 1 & \text{if } j > i. \end{cases}
\]

In short, the image of \( \varepsilon_i \) misses \( i \) and the image of \( \eta_i \) doubles \( i \).

The following is a standard result which can be found in nearly any text containing simplicial theory (e.g. [23]).

**Proposition 3.4.2.** Every morphism \( \alpha : [m] \to [n] \) in \( \Delta \) has a unique epi-monic factorization \( \alpha = \varepsilon \eta \) such that

\[
\varepsilon = \varepsilon_{i_1} \cdots \varepsilon_{i_s} \quad \text{with } 0 \leq i_s \leq \cdots \leq i_1 \leq m
\]

\[
\eta = \eta_{j_1} \cdots \eta_{j_t} \quad \text{with } 0 \leq j_1 < \cdots < j_t < n
\]
Let \( C \) be any category. A simplicial object of \( C \) is a contravariant functor \( X : \Delta^{\text{op}} \to C \). We use the following notation conventions:

\[
X_n = X([n]), \quad \partial_i = X(\varepsilon_i), \quad \sigma_i = X(\eta_i).
\]

The simplicial face and degeneracy maps \( \partial_i, \sigma_i \) satisfy the following simplicial identities:

\[
\partial_i \partial_j = \partial_{j-1} \partial_i \quad \text{if} \quad i < j
\]

\[
\sigma_i \sigma_j = \sigma_{j+1} \sigma_i \quad \text{if} \quad i \leq j
\]

\[
\partial_i \sigma_j = \begin{cases} 
\sigma_{j-1} \partial_i & \text{if} \quad i < j \\
\text{id} & \text{if} \quad i = j \quad \text{or} \quad i = j + 1 \\
\sigma_j \partial_{i-1} & \text{if} \quad i > j + 1 
\end{cases}
\]

**Remark 3.4.3.** Suppose \( C \) is a concrete category so that there is a faithful functor \( U : C \to \text{Sets} \). In this setting we are able to talk about the elements an object of \( C \) contains.

An element \( x \in X_n \) is called an \( n \)-cell, \( n \)-simplex, or simply a cell/simplex. Any cell \( x \) in the image of some \( \sigma_i \) is degenerate (as they do not contribute to homotopy groups).

If \( X_n \) contains a non-degenerate cell and for \( i > n \) all cells in \( X_i \) are degenerate, we say \( n \) is the dimension of \( X \) and call the non-degenerate elements of \( X_n \) top dimension (or level) cells or simply top cells. If \( x \) is a top cell in \( X \), the element \( \partial_i x \) is its \( i \)th face.

Also, the elements of \( X_0 \) are called vertices.

A morphism of simplicial objects \( X, X' \) is a natural transformation \( f : X \Rightarrow X' \).

The category of simplicial objects of \( C \) together with these morphisms will be denoted \( \Delta^{\text{op}} C \). When \( C \) has the necessary products (coproducts), we may define the product (coproduct) of two simplicial objects by

\[
(A \times B)_n = A_n \times B_n \quad \text{and} \quad (A \amalg B)_n = A_n \amalg B_n
\]

with the obvious induced face and degeneracy maps. Note that to give a map \( f : \Delta^n \to Y \) of simplicial sets, it is enough to define \( f \) on the unique non-degenerate top cell of \( \Delta^n \) since \( f \) commutes with both the face and degeneracy maps. For this reason, we may use the notation \( \Delta^n \overset{x}{\to} X \) to mean the map sending the unique non-degenerate \( n \)-cell in \( \Delta^n \) to \( x \in X_n \).
Perhaps the most ubiquitous simplicial category is $\Delta^{op}\mathbf{Sets}$, whose objects can be used to build simplicial objects in any category. If $X$ is a simplicial set and $C$ is a simplicial object of a category $\mathcal{C}$ with all small coproducts, construct the simplicial object $C \boxtimes X$ in $\Delta^{op}\mathcal{C}$ by

$$(C \boxtimes X)_n = \coprod_{x \in X_n} C_n[x], \quad C_n[x] := C_n,$$

with face maps $\partial_i$ defined by $c[x] \mapsto \partial_i c[\partial_i x]$ and degeneracy maps defined analogously. The notation $C_n[x]$ merely provides the index $x$ in the notation for convenience. That is, the face map sends the element $c$ in the summand indexed by $x$ to the element $\partial_i c$ in the summand indexed by $\partial_i x$.

There is an inclusion $\mathcal{C} \hookrightarrow \Delta^{op}\mathcal{C}$ sending every object $C$ to the simplicial object, also denoted $C$, with $C_n = C$ and all face/degeneracy maps defined to be the identity map. Simplicial objects of this kind are called constant. Thus, for any object $C$ and simplicial set $X$, we have the simplicial object $C \boxtimes X$ of $\mathcal{C}$. Constant simplicial objects are a special case of a broader class of nice simplicial objects.

**Definition 3.4.4.** A simplicial object $C$ is split if there exist subobjects $N(C_m)$ of $C_m$ such that the map

$$\coprod_{n\preceq m} N(C_m) \to C_n,$$

where each morphism $\eta$ in $\Delta$ is surjective, is an isomorphism for all $n \geq 0$.

Split objects tend to separate the degenerate and non-degenerate cells as is the case in $\Delta^{op}\mathbf{Sets}$ and $\Delta^{op}\mathbf{A}$ where $\mathbf{A}$ is an abelian category. In fact, the well known Dold-Kan theorem constructs a functor $K$ which assigns to every chain complex $C$ a split simplicial object $KC$. In this paper we attempt to extend the Dold-Kan theorem to a nice class of non-abelian categories, like $\mathbf{A}$-sets, taking advantage of $K$ along the way.

One of the most fundamental simplicial sets is the simplicial $n$-simplex $\Delta^n : \Delta^{op} \to \mathbf{Sets}$ defined by $[k] \mapsto \text{Hom}_\Delta([k],[n])$. The boundary $\partial \Delta^n \subseteq \Delta^n$ is the simplicial set consisting of all non-identity injections $[k] \to [n]$. This effectively removes the single, non-degenerate $n$-cell of $\Delta^n$ and may be thought of as a simplicial $n-1$ sphere. Finally, the $k$-horn $\Lambda^k_n \subseteq \Delta^n$ is the simplicial set consisting of all non-identity, injective
morphisms \([k] \rightarrow [n]\) except the inclusion \([n - 1] \rightarrow [n]\) whose image misses \(k\). This effectively removes the non-degenerate, \(n\)-cell and its \(k\)th face.

Let \(|\Delta^n| \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n\) denote the convex hull of the points \(e_0, \ldots, e_n\) where \(e_0 = (0, \ldots, 0)\) and \(e_i\) has \(i\)th coordinate 1 and all others 0. Then \(|\Delta^n|\) consists of all points \((t_1, \ldots, t_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n\) such that \(t_i \geq 0\) for all \(i\) and \(\sum t_i \leq 1\). Thus \(|\Delta^n|\) is a topological space (with the subspace topology inherited from \(\mathbb{R}^n\)) called the geometric realization of \(\Delta^n\). A map \(\alpha : [m] \rightarrow [n]\) induces a map \(|\alpha| : |\Delta^n| \rightarrow |\Delta^n|\) defined by \(\alpha(e_i) = e_{\alpha(i)}\) and extending linearly.

We may extend definition of geometric realization to any simplicial set \(X\) as follows. For \(n \geq 0\) define a topology on the product \(X_n \times \Delta^n\) by considering it as the disjoint sum \(\bigsqcup_{x \in X_n} \Delta^n\) and using the topology of \(|\Delta^n|\). On the disjoint union

\[
\bigsqcup_{n \geq 0} X_n \times \Delta^n
\]

define an equivalence relation \(\sim\) by declaring \((x, t) \in X_n \times \Delta^m\) and \((x', t') \in X_n \times \Delta^n\) equivalent when there is a morphism \(\alpha : [m] \rightarrow [n]\) in \(\Delta\) such that \(X(\alpha)(x') = x\) and \(|\alpha(t')| = |\alpha(t)|\). Note that \(X(\alpha) : X_n \rightarrow X_m\) is the set map obtained by applying \(X : \Delta^{op} \rightarrow \text{Sets}\) itself to \(\alpha\). The quotient topological space \(\bigsqcup (X_n \times \Delta^n) / \sim\) is the geometric realization of \(X\).

A morphism \(f : X \rightarrow Y\) of simplicial sets induces a morphism \(|f| : |X| \rightarrow |Y|\) defined on cells by extending each map \(x \mapsto f(x)\) linearly to \(|x| \mapsto |f(x)|\). In this way the geometric realization defines a functor \(\Delta^{op}\text{Sets} \rightarrow \text{Top}\) where \(\text{Top}\) is the category whose objects are topological spaces and whose morphisms are continuous functions.

**Definition 3.4.5.** Define a morphism \(f : X \rightarrow Y\) in \(\text{Sets}\) to be a weak equivalence when the corresponding continuous map \(|f| : |X| \rightarrow |Y|\) of topological spaces induces isomorphisms \(\pi_n(|X|) \rightarrow \pi_n(|Y|)\) for all \(n \geq 0\). A morphism \(p\) is a fibration when it has the RLP for all diagrams of the form

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\Lambda^n_k & \rightarrow & X \\
\downarrow^3 & \nearrow \downarrow^p \\
\Delta^n & \rightarrow & Y
\end{array}
\]
where the left vertical map is the inclusion. A morphism is a cofibration when it has the LLP with respect to all trivial fibrations. It is shown in [15, 3.6.5] that these collections of morphisms define a model structure on $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}$. By [15, 3.2.1], a map $p$ is a trivial fibration when it has the RLP for all diagrams of the form

$$\begin{array}{c}
\partial \Delta^n \\
\downarrow \\
\Delta^n
\end{array} \rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
X \\
p \\
Y
\end{array}$$

where the left vertical map is the inclusion, and consequently, a morphism is a cofibration if and only if it is an injection. Trivial cofibrations are also called \textit{anodyne extensions}.

For an exhaustive study of $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}$ and this model structure, see chapter 3 of [15]. As pointed out in [15, 3.6.6], the definitions of this model structure are made equally well for pointed simplicial sets and do form a model structure on $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}_*$. When discussing pointed simplicial sets, we use $*$ to denote the basepoint.

\textbf{Remark 3.4.6.} This model structure on $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}$ can be used to define a model structure on the category of simplicial objects in many concrete categories. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a concrete category with faithful (forgetful) functor $U : \mathcal{C} \to \text{Sets}$. Define a model structure on $\Delta^{op}\mathcal{C}$ by declaring a morphism $f$ to be a weak equivalence (resp., cofibration, resp., fibration) whenever $U(f)$ is a weak equivalence (resp., cofibration, resp., fibration) in $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}$. When $\mathcal{C} = R\text{-mod}$, we obtain a model structure on $\Delta^{op}R\text{-mod}$ and the Dold-Kan correspondence (see [23, 8.4]) provides an equivalence of categories $\text{Ch}_{\geq 0}(R) \cong \Delta^{op}R\text{-mod}$ which descends to $\text{D}_{\geq 0}(R) \cong \text{Ho} \Delta^{op}R\text{-mod}$. Since computing homology in $\text{Ch}(R)$ is equivalent computing homotopy groups in $\Delta^{op}R\text{-mod}$, there is no need to work with simplicial $R$-modules.

A fibration in $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}$ is traditionally called a \textit{Kan fibration} and may be defined element-wise in the following manner. A morphism $p : X \to Y$ is a Kan fibration when:

- for every $n \geq 0, y \in Y_{n+1}$ and $k \leq n + 1$, if $x_0, \ldots, x_{k-1}, x_{k+1}, \ldots, x_{n+1} \in X_n$ are such that $\partial_i y = p(x_i)$ and $\partial_i x_j = \partial_{j-1} x_i$ for all $i < j$ and $i, j \neq k$, then there exists $x \in X_{n+1}$ such that $p(x) = y$ and $\partial_i x = x_i$ for all $i \neq k$. Applying this definition to the basepoint map $X \to *$ in $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}_*$ gives the lifting properties $X$ must satisfy to be fibrant.
Recall that for two simplicial sets $X$ and $Y$, the \textit{mapping} or \textit{function complex} $\text{Map}(X,Y)$ is the simplicial sets with $\text{Map}(X,Y)_n = \text{Hom}_{\Delta^\text{op}\text{-Sets}}(X \times \Delta^n, Y)$ and boundary map $\partial_k f$ the composition $X \times \Delta^{n-1} \xrightarrow{1 \times i_k} X \times \Delta^n \xrightarrow{f} Y$ where $i_k$ is the inclusion of $\Delta^{n-1}$ into $\Delta^n$ as the $k^{th}$ face.

Let $X$ be a simplicial set and $x,y \in X_0$ be vertices. Let $\pi_0(X)$ denote $X/\sim$ where $\sim$ is the equivalence relation on $X_0$ generated by the relations $x \sim y$ whenever there exists $z \in X_1$ with $\partial_1 z = x$ and $\partial_0 z = y$. Choosing a distinguished vertex $\ast \in X_0$ makes $\pi_0(X)$ a pointed set with basepoint the homotopy (equivalence) class of $\ast$. We use the notation $\pi_0(X,\ast)$ when we wish to make the basepoint explicit. Note that the set of equivalence class of $\pi_0(X)$ are in one-to-one correspondence with the connected components of $X$. In particular, $X$ is connected when $\pi_0(X)$ has a single element.

In general, when $X$ is fibrant, the fiber $F$ over $\ast$ in $\text{Map}(\Delta^n, X) \to \text{Map}(\partial\Delta^n, X)$ is fibrant (see [15, 3.3.1]). In this case we define (see [15, 3.4.4]) the $n^{th}$ \textit{homotopy group} of $X$ to be $\pi_n(X,\ast) = \pi_0(F,\ast)$. That is, an element of $\pi_n$ is a homotopy class of a map $\Delta^n \to X$ such that the composition $\partial\Delta^n \to \Delta^n \to X$ is the constant map $\ast$. As we typically identify the sphere $S^n$ with the cofiber of $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$, this definition agrees with our intuition.

When $X$ is \textit{any} simplicial $A$-set, we define the homotopy groups $\pi_n(X)$ to be $\pi_n(RX)$ where $RX$ is a fibrant replacement for $X$.

\textbf{Remark 3.4.7.} Let $X$ be a fibrant, pointed simplicial set. To give a very convenient element-wise description of the homotopy groups, let

$$C_n(X,\ast) = \bigcap_{i=0}^n \ker(\partial_i : X_n \to X_{n-1}) = \{ x \in X_n \mid \partial_i x = \ast, 0 \leq i \leq n \}$$

and

$$B_n(X,\ast) = \bigcap_{i=0}^{n-1} \ker(\partial_i : X_{n+1} \to X_n) = \{ x' \in X_{n+1} \mid \partial_i x = \ast, 0 \leq i \leq n-1 \}.$$

Define a relation on $C_n(X,\ast)$ by declaring $x \sim x'$ whenever there is a $y \in B_n(X,\ast)$ such that $\partial_{n+1} y = x$ and $\partial_n y = x'$. When $X$ is fibrant, $\sim$ is an equivalence relation and $\pi_n(X,\ast)$ is the quotient $C_n(X,\ast)/\sim$. Equivalently, we may realize $\pi_n$ in the following
way. In the diagram

\[ B_{n+1}(X,*) \xrightarrow{\partial_{n+1}} B_n(X,*) \xrightarrow{\partial_n} B_{n-1}(X,*) \]

both \( \partial_n, \partial_{n-1} : B_n(X,*) \to B_{n-1}(X,*) \) coequalize \( \partial_{n+1}, \partial_n : B_{n+1}(X,*) \to B_n(X,*), \)

hence induce \( \bar{\partial}_n, \bar{\partial}_{n-1} : \text{coeq}(\partial_{n+1}, \partial_n) \to B_{n-1}(X,*) \) by the universal property for coequalizers. Then \( \pi_n(X,*) = \ker(\bar{\partial}_n) \cap \ker(\bar{\partial}_{n-1}) \) since \( \sim \) is an equivalence relation.

That is, given \( x_1, x_2 \) in \( C_n(X,*) \), we have \( x_1 \sim x_2 \) if and only if \( x_1 \) and \( x_2 \) are identified in \( \text{coeq}(\partial_{n+1}, \partial_n) \).

We now work in \( \Delta^{op}\text{Sets}_* \) and use the notation \( \pi_n(X) \) for \( \pi_n(X,*) \). To obtain long exact sequences we must consider fiber sequences \( F \xrightarrow{i} E \xrightarrow{p} B \) where \( F \) is the fiber over \(*\). Note that the previous sequence need only be isomorphic in \( \text{Ho} \Delta^{op}\text{Sets} \) to a sequence where each term is fibrant. Thus we may replace the given sequence with the new sequence where each term is now fibrant (though this may change the homotopy groups of the fiber). It is a standard result that when \( B \) is fibrant and \( p \) is a fibration, \( E \) and \( F \) are also fibrant. In any case we obtain (see [15, 3.4.9]) a long exact sequence

\[ \cdots \to \pi_{n+1}(B) \xrightarrow{\partial} \pi_n(F) \xrightarrow{i} \pi_n(E) \xrightarrow{p} \pi_n(B) \xrightarrow{\partial} \cdots \]

where the boundary map \( \partial \) is defined as follows (see [15, 3.4.8]). Given \( b \in C_n(B,*) \), the fibration condition provides \( e \in E_n \) with \( p(e) = b \) and \( \partial_i e = * \) for all \( i < n \). The equivalence class of \( \partial_i e \) in \( \pi_{n-1}(F) \) is independent of the choice of \( e \) and thus induces a map \( \partial : \pi_n(B) \to \pi_{n-1}(F) \) for all \( n \geq 1 \).

**Remark 3.4.8.** Given a functor \( F : \Delta^{op}\text{Sets}_* \to \Delta^{op}\text{Sets}_* \), we are interested in computing, should it exist, the total left derived functor

\[ \text{Ho} \Delta^{op}\text{Sets}_* \xrightarrow{L^F} \text{Ho} \Delta^{op}\text{Sets}_* \]

By analogy with \( \text{R-mod} \), if we wish to compute the \( n^{th} \) left derived functor \( L_n F \) of \( F \), we may include \( \text{Sets}_* \hookrightarrow \Delta^{op}\text{Sets}_* \) by considering any pointed set \( X \) as a constant simplicial set. Since all simplicial sets are cofibrant, finding a cofibrant replacement \( QX \) for \( X \) is unnecessary so \( L_n F(X) = \pi_n(F(X)) \). Note that finding a fibrant replacement of \( F(X) \) is required for computing \( \pi_n \).
Notice how the situation here is opposite from that in Ch(R) with the projective model structure. Every chain complex is fibrant so that the fibrant replacement functor R is superfluous. However, not every chain complex is cofibrant so that we must compute a cofibrant replacement (e.g. projective resolution) to compute the $n^{th}$ left derived functor of a right Quillen functor. Computing the projective resolution of a chain complex concentrated in degree 0 is not terribly difficult which allows a computable theory of derived functors for $R$-$\text{mod}$. We will see in the next section that $\Delta^{op}A$-sets inherits the worst of both situations.

3.5 Simplicial A-sets

A monoid $A$ may be realized as a category $A$ having a single object $*$ with morphisms $\text{End}(*) = A$. Then a simplicial $A$-set $X$ is a functor $X : A \to \Delta^{op}\text{Sets}$, with $X(*) = X$ and $A$-action realized by the simplicial set map $X(a) : X \to X$, $a \in \text{End}(*)$; more explicitly, for $x \in X_n$, $ax = X(a)(x)$. In this way $\Delta^{op}A$-sets is identified with the functor category $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}^A$ and [14, 11.7.3] provides a model structure (Definition 3.5.1 below) on $\Delta^{op}A$-sets defined just as the model structure on $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}$ provided in 3.4.5. We now describe the morphisms which make up this model structure.

Definition 3.5.1. The projective model structure on $\Delta^{op}A$-sets is defined as follows.

A map $p : X \to Y$ is a fibration when the underlying set map $U(p)$ is a fibration in $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}_*$. Equivalently, $p$ is a fibration when it has the RLP for all diagrams of the form

$$
\begin{array}{c}
A \boxtimes \Lambda _k^n \rightarrow X \\
\downarrow \exists \\
A \boxtimes \Delta^n \rightarrow Y
\end{array}
$$

where $A$ is the free, rank 1, constant simplicial $A$-set and $\boxtimes$ is defined as in Section 3.4.1.

A map is a weak equivalence when it induces isomorphisms an all homotopy groups and a trivial fibration when it is a fibration and weak equivalence. Furthermore, a cofibration has the LLP with respect to all trivial fibrations and a trivial cofibration is a map which is both a cofibration and weak equivalence. In particular, $A \boxtimes \partial \Delta^n \hookrightarrow A \boxtimes \Delta^n$ is a cofibration and $A \boxtimes \Lambda _k^n \hookrightarrow A \boxtimes \Delta^n$ is a trivial cofibration. Note that $\pi_n(X) = \pi_n(UX)$.
where $UX$ is the underlying simplicial set of $X$. Hence, the homotopy groups of $X$ may be computed by analyzing geometric realization $|UX|$ (see Section 3.4.1) or by finding a fibrant replacement $RX$ for $X$ and applying Remark 3.4.7. It is evident from Remark 3.4.7 that the homotopy groups of a simplicial $A$-set are themselves $A$-sets.

**Remark 3.5.2.** Call a morphism $X \to Y$ of simplicial $A$-sets free when for each $n \geq 0$, the map $X_n \to Y_n$ is an inclusion of the form $X_n \hookrightarrow X_n \vee F_n$ where each $F_n$ is a free $A$-set. It is shown in [14, 11.5.36] that free morphisms, as well as their retracts, are cofibrations. In particular, a simplicial $A$-set $F$ with $F_n$ free for all $n$ is cofibrant.

Recall that $f : X \to Y$ is a retract of $g$ when there is a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \longrightarrow & W \\
\downarrow^f & & \downarrow^g \\
Y & \longrightarrow & X \\
\end{array}
\]

where the horizontal compositions are the identity map. When $F$ is a level-wise free simplicial $A$-set, $0 \to F$ is a cofibration and a retract diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
0 & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
X & \longrightarrow & F \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X & \longrightarrow & X \\
\end{array}
\]

implies $X_n$ is a retract of $F_n$, hence projective $A$-set, for all $n$. Level-wise projective, simplicial $A$-sets occuring in this way are cofibrant. However, in contrast to $R\text{-mod}$, a general level-wise projective, simplicial $A$-set need not be cofibrant.

Hence, when $X$ is an $A$-set considered as a constant simplicial $A$-set, to find a cofibrant replacement $QX$ for $X$ it is enough for $QX$ to be level-wise free with $\pi_0(QX) \cong X$ and $\pi_i(X) = 0$ for $i > 0$. This situation is similar to that in $\text{Ch}(R)$ as we are finding a “projective resolution” for $X$. When $A = \mathbb{F}_1$, this agrees with the standard model structure on $\Delta^{op}\text{Sets}_*$. In this setting, every inclusion is a cofibration so every object of $\Delta^{op}\mathbb{F}_1\text{-sets}$ is cofibrant. Of course, every $\mathbb{F}_1$-set is free so that every inclusion $X \hookrightarrow Y$ is a free morphism. We now say what little we can about fibrations.

**Proposition 3.5.3.** Let $X \overset{p}{\longrightarrow} Y$ be a fibration in $\Delta^{op}A\text{-sets}$. If $p_* : \pi_0(X) \to \pi_0(Y)$ is onto, then $p$ is onto. We say that fibrations are surjective on connected components.
Proof. We may assume that $Y$ consists of a single connected component and show that $p$ is surjective. It is enough to show that $p_0 : X_0 \to Y_0$ is surjective since we may then use the LLP of the trivial cofibration $A \boxtimes \Delta^0 \fib \to A \boxtimes \Delta^n$ in the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{c}
A \boxtimes \Delta^0 \to X \\
\downarrow \quad \exists x \\
A \boxtimes \Delta^n \to Y
\end{array}
$$

to lift all $n$-cells with $n > 0$. That is, if any single vertex of an $n$-cell $y$ can be lifted, then $y$ itself can be lifted.

Let $y_0, y_1 \in Y_0$ be vertices connected by $y \in Y_1$ with $\partial_0 y = y_0$ and $\partial_1 y = y_1$. If $p(x_0) = y_0$ for $x_0 \in X_0$, we may use the lifting

$$
\begin{array}{c}
A \boxtimes \Lambda^1_0 \to X \\
\downarrow \quad \exists x \\
A \boxtimes \Delta^1 \to Y
\end{array}
$$

to obtain $x \in X_1$ with $p(x) = y$, hence $y_1 = \partial_1 y = \partial_1 p(x) = p(\partial_1 x)$. Similarly, if $p(x_1) = y_1$, replacing the map $x_0$ with $x_1 : A \boxtimes \Lambda^1_0 \to X$, we obtain $x' \in X_1$ with $p(x') = y$ and $y = p(\partial_1 x')$. Thus $y_0$ is in $p(X_0)$ if and only if $y_1$ is in $p(X_0)$. Since $Y$ is connected, we may do this for all vertices, so that $p_0 : X_0 \to Y_0$ is surjective. A very similar argument shows $p_1 : X_1 \to Y_1$ is surjective. Namely, given $y \in Y_1$ and a lift $x_0$ of $\partial_0 y$, the diagram above provides $x \in X_1$ mapping onto $y$.

Remark 3.5.4. The free $A$-set functor $F$ is left adjoint to the forgetful functor $U$ and provides a Quillen adjunction

$$
\Delta^\text{op} \text{Sets} \rightleftarrows \Delta^\text{op} A\text{-sets}.
$$

This shows that a map $X \to Y$ in $\Delta^\text{op} A\text{-sets}$ is a fibration if and only if the underlying simplicial set map is a fibration in $\Delta^\text{op} \text{Sets}$. Also, for every cofibration (i.e. injection) $K \to L$ of simplicial sets, $A \boxtimes K \to A \boxtimes L$ is a cofibration in $\Delta^\text{op} A\text{-sets}$. This provides an alternate proof of Proposition 3.5.3.

It immediately follows that trivial fibrations $p : X \fib Y$ are surjections since
\[ \pi_0(X) \to \pi_0(Y) \] is surjective. Unfortunately, not all surjections are fibrations. Fibrations and fibrant objects do not have a nice, explicit description as is the case in \( \text{Ch}(R) \).

Outside of surjectivity and Remark 3.5.4 there is little we can say explicitly about fibrations \( X \to Y \). The best description seems to be given by the lifting property itself. Generally, one does not compute explicitly with fibrations and fibrant objects, rather uses their existence and properties to prove more abstract theorems.

Note that the homotopy groups \( \pi_n(X) = \pi_n(UX, 0) \) of a simplicial \( A \)-set \( X \) are computed using the underlying simplicial set \( UX \). However, every face and degeneracy morphism of \( X \) is an \( A \)-set morphism so that the formulas in Remark 3.4.7 hold equally well for simplicial \( A \)-sets. That is, the kernel of each morphism is an \( A \)-set and the equivalence relation on \( C_n(X, 0) \) induced by the coequalizer is, in fact, a congruence. This implies that the homotopy groups are themselves \( A \)-sets.
Chapter 4

Complexes and computation

Using the homological theory of $R$-modules as a guide defining the derived category of a monoid $A$, our first task is to define what is a “chain complex” of $A$-sets. In this chapter we present the definition of the category of double-arrow complexes $Da(A)$. It is shown that all $A$-sets have a projective resolution which is a double-arrow complex and there is an adjunction between the category of reduced, double-arrow complexes and $\Delta^{op}A$-sets. We then compute $\text{Tor}_0^A$ and $\text{Tor}_1^A$ in a special case.

To finish the chapter we investigate the theory of $A$-set extensions. Though the author has not investigated a cohomology or cohomotopy theory for $A$-sets, we are able to describe extensions and prove a correspondence between extensions and an invariant obtained produced by a simplicial set traditionally used to compute Hochschild homology.

4.1 Double-arrow complexes

Working with simplicial objects and homotopy groups explicitly is very tedious and motivates alternative methods for computing invariants. Abelian categories $\mathcal{A}$ avoid this mess through the Dold-Kan theorem which states that $\Delta^{op}\mathcal{A} \cong Ch_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ and that this equivalence descends to their homotopy categories. In light of the more general homotopical algebra of Quillen, we can think of the traditional homological algebra of abelian categories, i.e., the study of chain complexes, as a preferable alternative to a theory using the language of simplicial objects. That is, all the “homotopical information” of a simplicial object in $\mathcal{A}$ is carried equally well by a chain complex and its homology.

In the proof of the Dold-Kan theorem, the functor which provides a (Moore) chain
complex for every simplicial object can be generalized slightly. Combining this with
the observations made in Remark 3.4.7, it seems that the key to coming up with a complex
suitable for carrying the homotopical information of a simplicial $A$-set lies in extending
a coequalizer sequence $\cdots X \rightrightarrows Y \rightarrow Z$ to the left.

We say that a diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \rightrightarrows & Y \\
\downarrow^{r} & & \downarrow^{u} \\
\downarrow^{s} & & \downarrow^{v} \\
Y & \rightrightarrows & Z
\end{array}
$$

commutes when both

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \rightrightarrows & Y \\
\downarrow^{r} & & \downarrow^{u} \\
\downarrow^{s} & & \downarrow^{v} \\
Y & \rightrightarrows & Z
\end{array}
$$

commute (see Section 3.1). That is, $ur = us$ and $vr = vs$.

**Definition 4.1.1.** A double-arrow complex $(X, r, s)$, or simply $X$, with objects in a
category $C$ is a commutative diagram

$$
\cdots \rightrightarrows X_{n+1} \rightrightarrows X_{n} \rightrightarrows X_{n-1} \rightrightarrows \cdots
$$

The subscripts on the morphisms will generally be dropped, as they should be clear
from the context, so the commutativity conditions may be written

$$rr = rs \text{ and } sr = ss.$$

We may refer to $r$ and $s$ as the boundary maps of $X$. A double-arrow complex is reduced
when $sr = ss = 0$.

Note that the commutativity conditions imply that each $r_n, s_n$ induces morphisms
$r_n, s_n : \text{coeq}(r_{n+1}, s_{n+1}) \rightarrow C_{n-1}$ in any category $C$ where the coequalizers exist. We
say that a double arrow complex $X$ is bounded below (resp. above) when there is an
$N \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $X_n = 0$ for all $n < N$ (resp. $n > N$). A complex is bounded when it is
both bounded above and below.

**Definition 4.1.2.** Let $X$ and $Y$ be double-arrow complexes. A morphism of double-
arrow complexes, or complex map, $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is a collection of morphisms $f_n : X_n \rightarrow Y_n$, $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that the following diagrams commute:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_n & \xrightarrow{f_n} & Y_n \\
\downarrow^{r_n} & & \downarrow^{r_n} \\
X_{n-1} & \xrightarrow{f_{n-1}} & Y_{n-1}
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc}
X_n & \xrightarrow{f_n} & Y_n \\
\downarrow^{s_n} & & \downarrow^{s_n} \\
X_{n-1} & \xrightarrow{f_{n-1}} & Y_{n-1}
\end{array}
$$

(4.1)
namely, \( rf = fr \) and \( sf = fs \). In general, we condense the previous commutative squares into a single diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_n & \xrightarrow{f_{n+1}} & Y_n \\
s & \downarrow{r} & s \\
X_{n-1} & \xrightarrow{f_n} & Y_{n-1}
\end{array}
\]

which we say \emph{commutes} when both diagrams in 4.1 commute.

Again, the subscripts will generally be dropped when there is no chance of confusion.

Let \( \text{Da}(\mathcal{C}) \) (resp., \( \tilde{\text{Da}}(\mathcal{C}) \), resp., \( \text{Da}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{C}) \)) denote the category of double-arrow complexes (resp., reduced complexes, resp., complexes bounded below by 0) with objects in a category \( \mathcal{C} \) together with morphisms defined in 4.1.2. For simplicity we write \( \text{Da}(A) \) for the category of double-arrow complexes of \( A \)-sets.

As with chain complexes in abelian categories, we may define the \emph{translation} \( X[p] \) of a double-arrow complex \( X \) to be the complex with \( X[p]_n = X_{n+p} \) and the obvious boundary maps. In particular, \( X[1]_0 = X_1 \) so that \( X[1] \) is obtained by shifting the terms of \( X \) to the right.

A map \( f : X \to Y \) in \( \text{Da}(A) \) is \emph{admissible} when each \( f_n : X_n \to Y_n \) is admissible. A sequence \( X \to Y \to Z \) of double-arrow complexes of \( A \)-sets is \emph{exact at \( Y \)} when each sequence of \( A \)-sets \( X_n \to Y_n \to Z_n \) is exact for every \( n \). Therefore, a sequence \( 0 \to X \to Y \to Z \to 0 \) in \( \text{Da}(A) \) is an \emph{admissible exact sequence} (a.e.s.) when each sequence \( 0 \to X_n \to Y_n \to Z_n \to 0 \) is an a.e.s. of \( A \)-sets.

**Example 4.1.3.** (Moore complex) Let \( X \) be a simplicial \( A \)-set. Define a reduced, double-arrow complex in the following way. For \( n \geq 2 \), set

\[
(NX)_n = \bigcap_{i=0}^{n-2} \ker(X_n \xrightarrow{\partial_i} X_{n-1})
\]

and set \( (NX)_1 = X_1 \), \( (NX)_0 = X_0 \). Then the sequence

\[
\cdots \xrightarrow{\partial_{n+2}} (NX)_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\partial_{n+1}} (NX)_n \xrightarrow{\partial_n} (NX)_{n-1} \xrightarrow{\partial_{n-1}} \cdots \xrightarrow{\partial_1} (NX)_0 \xrightarrow{\partial_0} 0
\]

is a \emph{reduced}, double-arrow complex by the simplicial identity \( \partial_i \partial_j = \partial_j \partial_{j-1} \), for \( i < j \), and since the face map \( \partial_{n-1} : (NX)_n \to (NX)_{n-1} \) is trivial. Recall that the boundary maps of any reduced complex satisfy \( sr = ss = 0 \) (see Definition 4.1.1). In this way
we obtain a functor $N : \Delta^{op}A\text{-sets} \to \tilde{D}_{\geq 0}(A)$ with $X \mapsto NX$. We write $N_nX$ for $(NX)_n$.

**Definition 4.1.4.** Let $C$ be a pointed, concrete category closed under kernels and coequalizers. The $n^{th}$ homology of a double-arrow complex $X$ is the object $H_n(X) = \ker(\bar{r}_n) \cap \ker(\bar{s}_n)$ in $C$, where $\bar{r}_n, \bar{s}_n$ are induced by the universal property. The following diagram places the homology

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
H_n(X) & \rightarrow & \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{\partial_{n+1}} & X_n \\
\partial_n & & \partial_n \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X_n & \xrightarrow{\partial_n} & X_{n-1}
\end{array}
$$

We say that $X$ is **exact at** $X_n$ when $H_n(X) = 0$ and **exact** when it is exact at $X_n$ for all $n$.

We wish to stress the fact that the $n^{th}$ homology $H_n(X)$ is an object of $C$. Thus, if $X$ is in $Da(A)$, the homology is an $A$-set.

**Example 4.1.5.** If $X$ is a fibrant simplicial $A$-set, then $\pi_n(X) = H_n(NX)$ where $N$ is the Moore functor of Example 4.1.3. As per Remark 3.4.7, $\pi_n(X)$ may be computed from the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
N_{n+1}X & \xrightarrow{\partial_{n+1}} & N_nX \\
\partial_n & & \partial_n \\
N_nX & \xrightarrow{\partial_n} & N_{n-1}X \\
\end{array}
$$

as

$$
\pi_n(X) = \left( \ker(N_nX \xrightarrow{\partial_{n+1}} N_{n-1}X) \cap \ker(N_nX \xrightarrow{\partial_{n-1}} N_{n-1}X) \right) / \sim
$$

where $\partial_{n+1}x \sim \partial_nx$ for all $x \in N_{n+1}X$. Alternatively, $H_n(NX)$ is computed from the diagram by first applying the congruence $\text{coeq}(\partial_{n+1}, \partial_n)$, and then finding $\ker(\bar{\partial}_n) \cap \ker(\bar{\partial}_{n-1})$. These computation differ only in the order in which we compute kernels and quotient by a congruence. Since $X$ is fibrant, so that $\sim$ is a congruence, these operations commute.

**Remark 4.1.6.** The use of two boundary morphisms in a double-arrow complex allow for a different definition of homology. We could also define the $n^{th}$ homology of a double-arrow complex to be the equalizer $H_n(X) = \text{eq}(\bar{r}_n, \bar{s}_n)$. 

It is interesting that this alternative definition of homology may be applied in categories (such as \textbf{Sets}) which do not contain a zero object. In this setting there is no such thing as a bounded double-arrow complex. Rather there are double-arrow complexes of the form

\[
\cdots \Rightarrow \text{eq}(r_m, s_m) \Rightarrow X_m \overset{r_m}{\Rightarrow} \cdots \Rightarrow X_{n-1} \Rightarrow \text{coeq}(r_n, s_n) \overset{1}{\Rightarrow} \cdots
\]

for some \( m \geq n \); that is, complexes which are eventually constant.

By Example 4.1.5, our definition of homology (4.1.4) is compatible with the definition of homotopy groups. This is the reason that homology in pointed categories makes use of kernels rather than equalizers. Moreover, Example 4.1.7 below shows that the homology of a double-arrow complex specializes to the homology of a chain complex when considering abelian categories. Although the homotopy groups of a simplicial set are independent of the choice of basepoint, the choice of a basepoint is still required so that one must work in \( \Delta^{op}\text{Sets} \), rather than \( \Delta^{op}\text{Sets} \). Thus our double-arrow complexes must be “based” as well if we wish to preserve this link with homotopy. We do not investigate a “basepoint free” homology any further in this thesis.

\textbf{Example 4.1.7.} When \( \mathcal{A} \) is an abelian category, any chain complex

\[
\cdots \overset{\partial}{\Rightarrow} A_{n+1} \overset{\partial}{\Rightarrow} A_n \overset{\partial}{\Rightarrow} A_{n-1} \overset{\partial}{\Rightarrow} \cdots
\]

defines a double-arrow complex \( A \) of the form

\[
\cdots \Rightarrow A_{n+1} \overset{\partial}{\Rightarrow} A_n \overset{\partial}{\Rightarrow} A_{n-1} \overset{\partial}{\Rightarrow} \cdots
\]

since the boundary maps satisfy the relation \( \partial^2 = 0 \). Moreover, \( H_n(A) \) is the kernel of \( A_n / \text{im}(\partial_{n+1}) \overset{\pi_n}{\Rightarrow} A_{n-1} \) which is equivalent to the usual definition of homology, namely \( \ker(\partial_n) / \text{im}(\partial_{n+1}) \).

\textbf{Lemma 4.1.8.} A morphism \( f : X \to Y \) in \( \text{Da}(\mathcal{C}) \) induces morphisms \((f_n)_* : H_n(X) \to H_n(Y)\) in \( \mathcal{C} \) for all \( n \). Namely, when \( \mathcal{C} = \mathcal{A}\text{-sets} \), the \((f_n)_* \) are \( \mathcal{A}\)-set morphisms. We use the notation \( f_* : H_*(X) \to H_*(Y) \) for the induced map.

\textbf{Proof.} Let \( g : X_n \to X_n \) and \( h : Y_n \to Y_n \) be the coequalizers of \( r_{n+1}, s_{n+1} \) in their respective complexes. Using the universal property of colimits for \( g \), we obtain a
commutative diagram
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_n & \xrightarrow{f_n} & Y_n \\
\downarrow{g} & & \downarrow{h} \\
\overline{X}_n & \xrightarrow{\overline{f}} & \overline{Y}_n \\
\end{array}
\]

Now, the relations \(r = \overline{r}g\) and \(r = \overline{r}h\) together with the commutative square above imply \(f\overline{r}g = \overline{r}f\overline{g}\). Since \(g\) is a surjection, we have a commutative diagram
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\overline{X}_n & \xrightarrow{\overline{f}_n} & \overline{Y}_n \\
\downarrow{\overline{r}} & & \downarrow{\overline{r}} \\
X_{n-1} & \xrightarrow{f_{n-1}} & Y_{n-1} \\
\end{array}
\]
so that \(\overline{f}_n\) maps \(\ker(\overline{r}) \subseteq \overline{X}_n\) to \(\ker(\overline{r}) \subseteq \overline{Y}_n\). Doing likewise for \(\overline{s}\) proves the claim. □

Let \(f : X \to Y\) be a morphism of double-arrow complexes. When the induced map \(f_* : H_*(X) \to H_*(Y)\) is an isomorphism, we say that \(f\) is a \textit{quasi-isomorphism}. We will show that the induced map \(f_*\) is admissible when \(f\) is both admissible and surjective.

To prove this, we first recall a fact about equivalence relations that are associated with a coequalizer.

**Lemma 4.1.9.** Given a coequalizer \(X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} \overline{Y}\) of \(A\)-sets, let \(R\) denote the congruence associated to the surjection \(h\) so that \(Y/R \cong \overline{Y}\). If \(y, y' \in Y\) and \(h(y) = h(y')\), then there is a finite (possibly empty) sequence of elements \(x_1, \ldots, x_n \in X\) and ordered pairs of maps \((p_i, q_i), 1 \leq i \leq n\), satisfying:

i) for each \(1 \leq i \leq n\), either \(p_i = f\) and \(q_i = g\), or else \(p_i = g\) and \(q_i = f\),

ii) \(q_i = p_{i+1}\) for \(1 \leq i \leq n - 1\),

iii) \(p_1(x_1) = y\) and \(q_n(x_n) = y'\).

Here we say that the \(x_i\) and \((p_i, q_i)\) are a \textit{zig-zag} connecting \(y\) and \(y'\).

**Proof.** Define a relation on the elements of \(Y\) by \(y \sim y'\) whenever there is a zig-zag connecting \(y\) and \(y'\). We first show that \(\sim\) is a congruence on \(Y\). Writing \(\sim \overline{Y}\) for the \(A\)-subset of \(Y \times Y\) associated to the congruence \(\sim\), it is apparent that \(\overline{Y}\) contains the image of the map \(X \xrightarrow{f \times g} Y \times Y\) (any element \((y, y') = (f \times g)(x)\) has \(y \sim y'\) using zig-zag \(x\) with \((p_1, q_1) = (f, g))\). Since \(R\) is the smallest congruence containing \(\text{im}(f \times g)\), if \(\sim\) is a congruence, it must be the case that \(\overline{R} = R\).
The relation \( \sim \) is trivially reflexive using the empty zig-zag. Now, suppose \( y \sim y' \) so there is zig-zag with elements \( x_i \in X \) and maps \( (p_i, q_i) \), \( 1 \leq i \leq n \), satisfying the conditions above. Then the sequence \( x_{n-i} \) with maps \( (q_{n-i}, p_{n-i}) \), \( 0 \leq i \leq n-1 \), form a zig-zag connecting \( y' \) to \( y \); so \( \sim \) is symmetric. Next, if \( y \sim y' \) and \( y \sim y'' \), let \( x_i \) with \( (p_i, q_i) \), \( 1 \leq i \leq n \), and \( x_j' \) with \( (p_j', q_j') \), \( 1 \leq j \leq m \), be the zig-zags connecting \( y \) to \( y' \) and \( y' \) to \( y'' \) respectively. Then the concatenation \( x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_1', \ldots, x_m' \) with maps \( (p_1, q_1), \ldots, (p_n, q_n), (p_1', q_1'), \ldots, (p_m', q_m') \) form a zig-zag connection \( y \) to \( y'' \).

Thus \( \sim \) is an equivalence relation. What remains to show is that \( \tilde{R} \subseteq Y \times Y \) is also an \( A \)-subset, hence a congruence. This follows immediately from the fact that \( f \) and \( g \) are \( A \)-set morphisms. Namely, if \( \{x_i, (p_i, q_i)\}_{i=1}^n \) is a zig-zag from \( y \) to \( y' \), then \( \{ax_i, (p_i, q_i)\}_{i=1}^n \) is a zig-zag from \( ay \) to \( ay' \).

**Proposition 4.1.10.** Let \( f : X \to Y \) be an admissible, surjective morphism of double-arrow complexes. Then \( f_* : H_n(X) \to H_n(Y) \) is admissible for all \( n \).

**Proof.** We have a diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{f_{n+1}} & Y_{n+1} \\
\downarrow s & & \downarrow s \\
X_n & \xrightarrow{f_n} & Y_n \\
\downarrow g & & \downarrow h \\
\overline{X}_n & \xrightarrow{\overline{f}_n} & \overline{Y}_n \\
\end{array}
\]

where \( g \) and \( h \) are the coequalizer maps. Using Lemma 4.1.8 and noting that \( H_n(X) \) is the \( A \)-subset \( \ker(\overline{r}) \cap \ker(\overline{s}) \subseteq \overline{X}_n \), the induced map \( f_* : H_n(X) \to H_n(Y) \) is simply the restriction \( H_n(X) \hookrightarrow \overline{X}_n \xrightarrow{\overline{f}_n} \overline{Y}_n \). Therefore we need only show that \( \overline{f}_n \) is admissible.

Suppose \( \bar{x}, \bar{x}' \in \overline{X}_n \) are such that \( f_n(\bar{x}) = \bar{x}' \neq 0 \) and choose \( x, x' \in X_n \) so that \( g(x) = \bar{x} \) and \( g(x') = \bar{x}' \). Commutativity of the bottom square implies \( h f_n(x) = h f_n(x') \), so there is a zig-zag connecting \( f_n(x) \) to \( f_n(x') \) with nonzero elements \( y_i \in Y_{n+1} \) and maps \( (p_i, q_i) \), \( 1 \leq i \leq n \). Since \( f_{n+1} \) is surjective and admissible, we can lift each \( y_i \) to a unique \( x_i \in X_{n+1} \). Moreover, since \( f \) is a morphism of double-arrow complexes and each \( p_i, q_i \) is one of the boundary maps \( r \) or \( s \), we have \( f p_i(x_i) = p_i f(x_i) = p_i(y_i) \). In particular, \( f p_1(x_1) = f(x) \) and \( f q_n(x_n) = f(x') \) and, using the admissibility of \( f \) once more, \( p_1(x_1) = x \) and \( q_n(x_n) = x' \). Therefore, the \( x_i \in X_{n+1} \) and maps \( (p_i, q_i) \),
1 \leq i \leq n, are a zig-zag connecting \( x \) to \( x' \); that is \( \bar{x} = \bar{x}' \).

### 4.2 Projective resolutions

Aside from being simpler to work with, double-arrow complexes provide a method for constructing projective resolutions. In an abelian category, a projective resolution of an object \( C \) is an exact sequence of projective objects \( \cdots \to P_2 \to P_1 \to P_0 \) such that \( C = \text{coker}(P_1 \to P_0) \). However, we are unable to replicate this in \( A\text{-sets} \) since not every \( A\)-set has a projective resolution using only admissible morphisms. For example, consider \( A = \mathbb{F}_1[x] \) and \( X = (A \vee A)/(x^n \vee 0 \sim 0 \vee x^n) \). The surjection \( A \vee A \to X \) is not admissible and has trivial kernel. Projective resolutions given by double-arrow complexes provide a little more information.

**Definition 4.2.1.** Let \( X \) be an \( A \)-set. A **projective resolution** for \( X \) is an exact double-arrow complex of projective \( A \)-sets

\[
\cdots \Rightarrow P_2 \Rightarrow P_1 \overset{r_1}{\Rightarrow} P_0 \overset{s_1}{\Rightarrow}
\]

and together with a map \( P_0 \overset{\varepsilon}{\Rightarrow} X \) that is the coequalizer of \( r_1, s_1 \). The morphism \( \varepsilon \) is called the **augmentation** map. A projective resolution is **reduced** if it is reduced as a double-arrow complex (see Definition 4.1.1). Note that the previous definition of projective resolution is equivalent to the **augmented complex**

\[
\cdots \Rightarrow P_2 \Rightarrow P_1 \overset{r_1}{\Rightarrow} P_0 \overset{s_1}{\Rightarrow} P_0 \overset{\varepsilon}{\Rightarrow} X \Rightarrow 0
\]

being exact.

The **length** of a projective resolution \( P \) is, the least integer \( \ell(P) \geq 0 \) such that \( P_n = 0 \) for all \( n > \ell(P) \). When no such integer exists set \( \ell(P) = +\infty \). Define the **projective dimension** of an \( A \)-set \( X \) to be \( pd(X) = \min\{\ell(P) \mid P \text{ is a projective resolution of } X\} \).

We now show that every \( A \)-set has a projective resolution. Note that the use of kernels in the proof of Proposition 4.2.2 is specific to our purposes and can be modified to use equalizers in order to obtain the same result for unpointed categories (see Remark 4.1.6). Afterward we show that every \( A \)-set has a reduced projective resolution. A
category $C$ has enough projectives if for every $C$ in $C$, there is a projective $P$ and an epimorphism $P \to C$. Certainly $A$-sets has enough projectives for if $X$ is any $A$-set, we have a surjection $A[X] \to X$ defined by $[x] \mapsto x$.

**Proposition 4.2.2.** Every $A$-set $X$ has a projective resolution.

**Proof.** Throughout this proof, the standard projection maps provided by a pullback will be written $p_1, p_2$. Also recall that we write $X/Y$ for the quotient of an $A$-set $X$ by a congruence $Y$.

Find a surjection $P_0 \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} X$ with $P_0$ projective and let $R_0$ be the pullback of $\varepsilon$ with itself. We have the exact sequence

$$R_0 \xrightarrow{p_1} P_0 \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} X \xrightarrow{0} 0.$$  

Now, find a surjection $P_1 \xrightarrow{h_1} R_0$ with $P_1$ projective and define $r_1 = p_1 h_1$ and $s_1 = p_2 h_1$. We now have a sequence

$$P_1 \xrightarrow{r_1} P_0 \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} X \xrightarrow{0} 0.$$  

Once more, let $R_1$ be the pullback of $h_1$ with itself and find a surjection $P_2 \xrightarrow{h_2} R_1$. Define maps $r_2 = p_1 h_2$ and $s_2 = p_2 h_2$ to obtain the sequence

$$P_2 \xrightarrow{r_2} P_1 \xrightarrow{r_1} P_0 \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} X \xrightarrow{0} 0.$$  

Repeating this process gives a sequence of projectives

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{r_3} P_2 \xrightarrow{r_2} P_1 \xrightarrow{r_1} P_0 \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} X \xrightarrow{0} 0$$

which is a double-arrow complex since the coequalizer

$$R_n \xrightarrow{p_1} P_n \xrightarrow{h_n} R_{n-1}$$

implies

$$r_n r_{n+1} = p_1 (h_n p_1) h_{n+1} = p_1 (h_n p_2) h_{n+1} = r_n s_{n+1}.$$  

A similar computation shows $s_n r_{n+1} = s_n s_{n+1}$. To check exactness, let $P$ denote the double-arrow complex of projectives and use $P \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} X \xrightarrow{0}$ to denote the entire complex.
Note that $R_n = \{(x, x') \in P_n \times P_n \mid h_n(x) = h_n(x')\}$ is a congruence on $P_n$, and since $h_n$ is surjective, we have

$$\text{coeq}(r_{n+1}, s_{n+1}) \cong P_n/R_n \cong R_{n-1}.$$  

For $n > 0$, $H_n(P)$ is $\ker(\tilde{r}_n) \cap \ker(\tilde{s}_n)$ in $\text{coeq}(r_{n+1}, s_{n+1}) \Rightarrow P_{n-1}$ and by construction, the induced maps $\tilde{r}_n, \tilde{s}_n$ are simply the projection maps $p_1, p_2$. So the previous diagram becomes

$$R_{n-1} \xrightarrow{p_1} P_{n-1} \xrightarrow{p_2}$$

and $(x, y) \in \ker(p_1) \cap \ker(p_2)$ means $p_1(x, y) = x = 0$ and $p_2(x, y) = y = 0$ so $(x, y) = (0, 0)$. Hence $H_n(P) = 0$ for $n > 0$. That $H_0(P) = \text{coeq}(r_1, s_1) = X$ is clear. □

**Remark 4.2.3.** The projective resolution constructed in the previous proposition is quite “large.” The coequalizer in the diagram $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{h} Z$ is equivalent to $Y \times_Z Y \xrightarrow{p_1} \xrightarrow{p_2} Z$ even though the difference between $X$ and $Y \times_Z Y$ is (likely to be) very large. Namely, $Y \times_Z Y$ is a congruence (see Section 2.2.3) whereas $X$ together with $f$ and $g$ generate a congruence. In fact $Y \times_Z Y$ is the congruence generated by $X$, i.e. there is no smaller congruence containing the image of the map $X \xrightarrow{f \times g} Y \times Y$.

Let notation be as in Proposition 4.2.2. When constructing a projective resolution of $X$, we do not need to work with surjections $P_{n+1} \xrightarrow{h_{n+1}} R_n$, rather we may use coequalizer diagrams $P_{n+1} \xrightarrow{r_{n+1}} \xrightarrow{s_{n+1}} P_n$ where $R_n$ is the congruence generated by $P_{n+1}$ (together with $r_{n+1}$ and $s_{n+1}$).

For a simple example of the difference between a “large” projective resolution (as in Proposition 4.2.2) and one that is much “smaller,” let $A = \mathbb{F}_1[x]$ and $X = A/x^n A$. The surjection $A \xrightarrow{1} X$ provides the pullback $A \times_X A$ which is an infinitely generated, free $A$-set with generators

$$S = \{(1, 1), (x^n, 0), (0, x^n), (x^n, x^{n+j}), (x^{n+j}, x^n) \mid i, j \geq 0\}.$$  

Thus, Proposition 4.2.2 yields the projective resolution

$$0 \Rightarrow \forall_{s \in S} A \xrightarrow{p_1} A \Rightarrow 0$$
for $X$ even though we know a smaller, much more intuitive resolution is

$$
0 \Rightarrow A \xrightarrow{x^n} A \Rightarrow 0.
$$

Many of the complications we encounter with $A$-sets do not arise in abelian categories. For example, every congruence on an $R$-module $M$ may be identified with an $R$-submodule $M' \subseteq M$. We can then find the generators $x_1, \ldots, x_m$ of $M'$ as an $R$-module and a surjection $\oplus_{i=1}^{m} R \to M'$ to avoid explicitly working with congruences. The $A$-set $X$ in the example above is of this form since $X$ is obtained from $A$ as the quotient by the ideal, hence $A$-subset, $x^nA$. Of course, it is not always possible to realize a general $A$-set as the quotient of a projective $P$ by an $A$-subset. In such a situation we are not able to identify elements in a congruence on $Y$ with elements in $Y$.

**Proposition 4.2.4.** Every $A$-set $X$ has a reduced projective resolution of the form:

$$
\cdots \xrightarrow{r_{n+1}} P_n \xrightarrow{r_n} \cdots \xrightarrow{r_3} P_2 \xrightarrow{r_2} P_1 \xrightarrow{r_1} P_0.
$$

**Proof.** Begin by constructing a sequence $P_1 \xrightarrow{r_1} P_0 \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} X \xrightarrow{s_1} 0$ as in the proof of Proposition 4.2.2. That is, $P_0$ and $P_1$ are projective $A$-sets and $\text{coeq}(r_1, s_1) = X$. For $n \geq 1$, find a projective $P_{n+1}$ with a surjection $r_{n+1} : P_{n+1} \to K_n = \ker(r_n) \cap \ker(s_n)$ and define $s_{n+1} : P_{n+1} \to P_n$ to be the trivial map. Then

$$
\cdots \xrightarrow{r_{n+1}} P_n \xrightarrow{r_n} \cdots \xrightarrow{r_3} P_2 \xrightarrow{r_2} P_1 \xrightarrow{r_1} P_0
$$

is a reduced projective resolution for $X$ since $\text{coeq}(r_{n+1}, 0) = P_{n}/K_n$ and $\ker(\bar{r}_n) = \ker(r_n)/K_n$. Note that when $n \geq 2$, $K_n = \ker(r_n)$.

The reader should notice that reduced projective resolutions in $A$-sets are not too different from projective resolutions in abelian categories. After computing the initial coequalizer $P_1 \xrightarrow{r_1} P_0 \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} X$ the remainder of the (reduced projective) resolution is computed in the usual way.
4.2.1 Dold-Kan: A first attempt

Recall the following definitions from [12, IV.3.2]. Let $X$ be a simplicial set and obtain the $n$-truncated simplicial set $\tau_n X$ by removing all cells above dimension $n$. If $\Delta^{op}\mathbf{Sets}_n$ denotes the category of $n$-truncated simplicial sets, $\tau_n : \Delta^{op}\mathbf{Sets} \to \Delta^{op}\mathbf{Sets}_n$ defines a functor whose left adjoint $sk_n : \Delta^{op}\mathbf{Sets}_n \to \Delta^{op}\mathbf{Sets}$ is called the $n$-skeleton. The functor $sk_n$ simply fills out an $n$-truncated simplicial set with the degenerate cells necessary to make it a simplicial set. More precisely, if $X$ is an $n$-truncated simplicial set, then for $k > n$ define

$$(sk_n X)_k = \coprod_{\eta : [k] \to [m]} X_m$$

where the coproduct is taken over all surjective maps $\eta : [k] \to [m]$ in the category $\Delta$. All such summands consist of degenerate $k$-cells in $sk_n X$. Given a summand $X_m \subseteq (sk_n X)_k$ corresponding to morphism $\eta$, the morphism $\eta$ has epi-monic factorization (see 3.4.2) $\eta = \eta_{j_1} \cdots \eta_{j_t}$ consiting entirely of degeneracy maps; then $X_m$ is image of the composition $\sigma_{j_t} \cdots \sigma_{j_1} : X_m \subseteq (sk_n X)_{k-t} \to (sk_n X)_k$. In particular, we have $\pi_k(sk_n \tau_n X) = \pi_k(X)$ when $k < n$. When $X$ is a truncated, simplicial $A$-set, the previous formulas show that $sk_n X$ naturally has the structure of a simplicial $A$-set where the coproduct is the wedge sum $\vee$. In this way we may consider the $n$-truncation and $n$-skeleton as functors acting on (truncated) simplicial $A$-sets.

The Moore functor $N : \Delta^{op}\mathbf{-sets} \to \tilde{\mathbf{Da}}_{\geq 0}(A)$ of Example 4.1.3 comprises half of the correspondence between simplicial $A$-sets and reduced, positively graded, double-arrow complexes. We now show how to construct a sequence of truncated simplicial $A$-sets from an object of $\tilde{\mathbf{Da}}_{\geq 0}(A)$ which is then used to define a left adjoint of $N$.

**Example 4.2.5.** Let $X$ be a reduced, positive, double-arrow complex of $A$-sets, that is $X \in \tilde{\mathbf{Da}}_{\geq 0}(A)$. We inductively define a sequence $X^{(0)}, X^{(1)}, \ldots$ of truncated simplicial $A$-sets where each $X^{(n)}$ is in $\Delta^{op}\mathbf{A-sets}_n$. Set $X^{(0)} = X_0$ and for $n > 0$, define the cells of $X^{(n)}$ as follows:

$$X^{(n)}_i = \begin{cases} X^{(n-1)}_i & 0 \leq i \leq n - 1 \\ X_n \vee (sk_{n-1}X^{(n-1)})_n & i = n. \end{cases}$$
Since $X^{(n-1)}$ is already an $(n-1)$-truncated simplicial $A$-set, all face and degeneracy maps are defined and satisfy the simplicial identities everywhere except at $X_n \subset X^{(n)}$. Moreover, the image of the degeneracy maps $\sigma_j : X^{(n)}_{n-1} \to X^{(n)}_n$ misses $X_n$ so that we need only verify the simplicial identities $\partial_i \partial_j = \partial_{j-1} \partial_i$ where $i < j$. Define the restrictions $X_n \hookleftarrow X^{(n)}_n \to X^{(n)}_{n-1}$ as follows:

$$\partial_i = \begin{cases} 0 & 0 \leq i \leq n-2 \\ s_n & i = n-1 \\ r_n & i = n. \end{cases}$$

We now verify the simplicial identity $\partial_i \partial_j = \partial_{j-1} \partial_i$ for $i < j$. When $j \leq n-2$, both sides evaluate to the trivial map.

When $j = n-1$: we have $\partial_i \partial_j = \partial_i s_n$ and $\partial_{j-1} \partial_i = s_{n-1} \partial_i$. When $i < n-2$, both are trivial and when $i = n-2$, we have the equality $\partial_i s_n = s_{n-1} s_n = 0 = s_{n-1} \partial_{n-2}$ since $X$ is a reduced complex.

When $i = n-2$, the equality $\partial_i r_n = s_{n-1} r_n = 0 = r_{n-1} \partial_{n-2}$ holds since $X$ is reduced. For $i = n-1$, we have the equality $\partial_i r_n = r_{n-1} r_n = r_{n-1} s_n = r_{n-1} \partial_{n-1}$ since $X$ is a double-arrow complex.

Therefore, $X^{(n)}$ is an $n$-truncated, simplicial $A$-set. From the construction it is also clear that for every $n \geq 0$, we have an inclusion $sk_n X^{(n)} \hookleftarrow sk_{n+1} X^{(n+1)}$ and when $X$ is bounded above by $k$, we have $sk_n X^{(n)} \cong sk_{n+1} X^{(n+1)}$ for all $n > k$.

**Definition 4.2.6.** (Inverse Dold-Kan) Let $X$ be an object in $\tilde{D}a_{\geq 0}(A)$ and

$$sk_0 X^{(0)} \hookleftarrow sk_1 X^{(1)} \hookleftarrow sk_2 X^{(2)} \hookleftarrow \ldots$$

be the sequence of simplicial $A$-sets obtained from the truncated, simplicial $A$-sets constructed above; that is $X^{(n)}$ is $n$-truncated. Then $KX = \colim sk_n X^{(n)}$ is also a simplicial $A$-set from which we obtain the functor $K : \tilde{D}a_{\geq 0}(A) \to \Delta^{op} A$-sets, $X \mapsto KX$. Again, we write $K_n X$ for $(KX)_n$. Also note that $KX$ is a split simplicial $A$-set whose non-degenerate $n$-cells are contained in the summand $X_n \subset K_n X$. 
Theorem 4.2.7. The functors $N$ and $K$ form an adjunction

$$\text{Hom}_{\Delta^{op}A\text{-sets}}(KX, Y) \cong \text{Hom}_{\tilde{\text{Da}}_{\geq 0}(A)}(X, NY).$$

Proof. For $n \geq 1$, we have $N_n KX = X_n \vee \text{im}(\sigma_{n-1})$ since $\partial_i \sigma_i = \text{id}$ and $\partial_i \sigma_{n-1} = \sigma_{n-2} \partial_i = 0$ for $0 \leq i \leq n-2$. Since $r, s : N_n KX \to N_{n-1} KX$ are $\partial_n = r_n$ and $\partial_{n-1} = s_n$ respectively, there is an inclusion $X \hookrightarrow NKX$ in $\tilde{\text{Da}}(A)$ given by the identity map. Moreover, if $f : KX \to Y$ is a simplicial $A$-set morphism, the composition

$$\Phi(f) : X \hookrightarrow NKX \xrightarrow{Nf} NY$$

is a morphism in $\text{Hom}_{\tilde{\text{Da}}_{\geq 0}(A)}(X, NY)$.

Now, to define a map $\varepsilon : KNY \to Y$ between simplicial objects, it is enough to define it on the non-degenerate cells $N_n Y \subseteq K_n NY$ in a way that is compatible with the face maps, since it is easily defined to be compatible with the degeneracy maps, i.e. $\varepsilon_n \sigma_j(y) := \sigma_j(y)$. However, since the boundary maps of $NY$ are the restrictions $N_n Y \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_n} Y_n \xrightarrow{\partial_n} Y_{n-1}$, it is clear that the $\varepsilon_n$ are compatible with the face maps $\partial_i$ of $Y$. Thus, the $\varepsilon_n$ comprise a simplicial $A$-set map $\varepsilon : KNY \to Y$ and if $g : X \to NY$ is any map of (reduced) double-arrow complexes, the composition

$$\Psi(g) : KX \xrightarrow{Kg} KNY \to Y$$

is a morphism in $\text{Hom}_{\Delta^{op}A\text{-sets}}(KX, Y)$.

We now show the operations $\Phi$ and $\Psi$ are inverses. Let $f : KX \to Y$ be as above so that $(\Psi \circ \Phi)(f)$ is the composition

$$KX \hookrightarrow KNKX \xrightarrow{KNf} KNY \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_n} Y.$$
which is precisely \( x \mapsto f_n(x) \). That is, the first two maps compose to be the identity and \( \text{im}(K_n N f|X_n) \subseteq N_n Y \). Finally, let \( g : X \rightarrow NY \) be as above so that \((\Phi \circ \Psi)(g)\) is the composition
\[
X \hookrightarrow NKX \xrightarrow{NKg} NKNY \to NY
\]
and at dimension \( n \) we have
\[
X_n \hookrightarrow X_n \vee \text{im}(\sigma_{n-1}) \xrightarrow{N_n Kg} N_n Y \vee \text{im}(\sigma_{n-1}) \to N_n Y.
\]
The composition of the first two map is precisely \( g_n \), and the composition \( N_n Y \hookrightarrow N_n Y \vee \text{im}(\sigma_{n-1}) \to N_n Y \) is, again, the identity map.

4.3 Tor*

Here we look at an example of derived functor of the tensor product functor \(- \otimes_A Y : A\text{-sets} \rightarrow A\text{-sets}\) defined by \( X \mapsto X \otimes A \) (see Section 2.3). Of course, this extends to a functor \(- \otimes_A Y : \Delta^{op}A\text{-sets} \rightarrow \Delta^{op}A\text{-sets}\) by \( X \mapsto X \otimes_A Y \) which is the simplicial \( A\)-set with \((X \otimes_A Y)_n = X_n \otimes Y\). As usual, we write \( \text{Tor}^A(\cdot, Y)(X) \), or simply \( \text{Tor}_*(\cdot, Y)(X) \) for the left derived functor \( L(- \otimes Y)(X) \) and \( \text{Tor}_n^A(\cdot, Y)(X) \), or \( \text{Tor}_n(\cdot, Y)(X) \) for the \( n^{th} \) left derived functor \( L_n(- \otimes_A Y)(X) = \pi_n \circ L(- \otimes Y)(X) \). The following is immediate from the right exactness of \(- \otimes_A Y\).

**Lemma 4.3.1.** \( \text{Tor}^0_A(X, Y) \cong X \otimes_A Y \).

Computing \( \text{Tor}_* \) is a difficult problem. If \( X \) is an \( A\)-set considered as a constant simplicial \( A\)-set, we need to compute the homotopy groups of a cofibrant replacement \( QX \) for \( X \). In \( \Delta^{op}A\text{-sets} \) it is simple to construct a level-wise projective simplicial \( A\)-set \( P \) with \( \pi_0(P) = X \). It is much more difficult to construct \( P \) so that it is aspherical. The easiest way to compute homotopy groups is to consider the geometric realization \(|P|\) and subsequently \(|P \otimes_A Y|\) to determine the \( n^{th} \) left derived functors. We present a simple example exhibiting this process.

**Example 4.3.2.** Let \( X \) be an \( A\)-set and \( a \) an element of \( A \) such that the map \( A \xrightarrow{\delta} A \) is an injection. We compute \( \text{Tor}_1^A(\cdot, X)(A/AA) \) as follows. Let \( P \) be the reduced free
resolution $0 \Rightarrow A \xrightarrow{a} A$ of $A/aA$ and $KP$ the associated simplicial $A$-set (see Definition 4.2.6). Every non-degenerate 1-cell of $KP$ is an element of $x \in P_1$ and has $\partial_0 x = 0$ and $\partial_1 x = ax$. Since $a : A \to A$ is an injection, $\partial_1 x \neq \partial_1 y$ when $x \neq y$ so that $|KP|$ has no cycles. Note also that $KP$ is cofibrant since it is level-wise free.

Now, the double-arrow complex

$$P \otimes_A X : 0 \Rightarrow X \xrightarrow{a} X \Rightarrow 0$$

determines the non-degenerate cell structure of $KP \otimes_A X$. By Lemma 4.3.1, we have $\text{Tor}_0^A(-, X)(A/aA) \cong X/aX$. To compute $\text{Tor}_1$, define $\partial_0, \partial_1 : X \to X$ by $\partial_0 x = 0$ and $\partial_1 x = ax$ as above. Again, every 1-cell lies in the connected component of 0 since $\partial_0 x = 0$. When $x \neq y$ are 1-cells, we have $\partial_1 x = \partial_1 y$ whenever $ax = ay$. Thus, all cycles in $|KP \otimes X|$ are of the form

$$0 \xrightarrow{x} 0 \xleftarrow{x} y : \begin{cases} ax = ay \end{cases}$$

the left instance occurring when $ax = 0$ and $x \neq 0$. We then see that $\text{Tor}_1(-, X)(A/aA)$ is the free, non-abelian group of order $\sum_{x \in X} (|\partial_1^{-1} x| - 1)$. This computation is similar to the result for abelian groups which shows $\text{Tor}_1^\mathbb{Z}(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}, N)$ consists of all $m$-torsion elements in the abelian group $N$.

**Remark 4.3.3.** One way to simplify computation is to work with homology groups rather than homotopy groups. Categorically this means computing with chain complexes rather than simplicial objects and in abelian categories these notions are equivalent (via Dold-Kan).

Let $k$ be a commutative ring with identity element. The $k$-realization functor $k[-] : A\text{-sets} \to k[A]-\text{mod}$ extends to a functor $\Delta^{op}A\text{-sets} \to \Delta^{op}k[A]-\text{mod}$, which we also call $k[-]$. There are two functors $N, C : \Delta^{op}k[A]-\text{mod} \to \text{Ch}_{\geq 0}(k[A])$ defined in the following way. Let $M$ be a simplicial $k[A]$-module. The Moore (or normalized) chain complex $NM$ (not to be confused with the Moore functor of Example 4.1.3) has $N_0 M = M_0$ and

$$N_n M = \bigcap_{i=0}^{n-1} \ker(\partial_i : M_n \to M_{n-1})$$
for $n > 0$ with differential $N_n M \xrightarrow{d} N_{n-1} M$ defined by $d = (-1)^n \partial_n$. The unnormalized chain complex $CM$ has $C_n M = M_n$ and differential $C_n M \xrightarrow{d} C_{n-1} M$ the alternating sum $d = \sum_{i=0}^{n} (-1)^i \partial_i$. It is shown in [23, 8.3.8] that $\pi_*(M) = H_*(NM) \cong H_*(CM)$.

Now, let $X$ be a simplicial $A$-set and $k[X]$ the associated simplicial $k[A]$-module. The simplicial homology of $X$ with coefficients in $k$ is $H_*(X; k) = H_*(Ck[X])$. Then the inclusion $h : X \hookrightarrow k[X]$ defined by $x \mapsto x$ is a morphism of simplicial sets called the Hurewicz homomorphism. The induced map

$$h_* : \pi_*(X) \rightarrow \pi_*(k[X]) \cong H_*(Ck[X]) = H_*(X; k)$$

provides the simplicial analogue to the well known relationship between the homotopy and homology groups of $|X|$. In particular, if $X$ is connected, then $H_1(X; \mathbb{Z})$ is the abelianization of $\pi_1(X)$.

**Example 4.3.4.** Continuing with Example 4.3.2, we can compute the homology groups of the chain complex $Ck[KP \otimes_A X]$ of $k[A]$-modules. Using Definition 4.2.6 together with the simplicial identities listed in Section 3.4.1, we determine $Ck[KP \otimes_A X]$ has the structure

$$\cdots \rightarrow k[X] \oplus k[X] \oplus k[X] \xrightarrow{d_2} k[X] \oplus k[X] \xrightarrow{d_1} k[X] \rightarrow 0$$

where $d_1 = \partial_0 - \partial_1$ is

$$(1,0) \mapsto 0, \quad (0,1) \mapsto -a$$

and $d_2 = \partial_0 - \partial_1 + \partial_2$ is

$$(1,0,0) \mapsto (1,0), \quad (0,1,0) \mapsto (1,0), \quad (0,0,1) \mapsto (0,0).$$

A simple computation of homology gives $H_0(KP \otimes_A X; k) \cong k[X]/ak[X] \cong k[X/aX]$ and $H_1(KP \otimes_A X; k) \cong \{ f \in k[X] \mid af = 0 \} \cong \text{Tor}^1_{A}(X(A/aA))$. As stated prior to this example, $H_1$ is the abelianization of $\text{Tor}^1_{A}(\cdot, X)(A/aA)$ and all elements $f \in H_1$ satisfy the singular condition that $af = 0$ in $k[X]$. For example, if $ax = ay$ in $X$ corresponds to a generator of $\text{Tor}^1_{A}(\cdot, X)(A/aA)$, then $a(x - y) = 0$ in $k[X]$ and $x - y \in H_1(KP \otimes_A X; k)$. Furthermore, if $ax_1 = \cdots = ax_n = 0$ in $X$, then $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ generate a free $k[A]$-submodule of $\text{Tor}^1$ of rank $n$. 

It is straightforward to determine $C_n k[P \otimes_A X]$, along with the boundary maps $d_n$, for $n > 2$ in order to see that $H_n(KP \otimes_A X; k) = 0$ for $n \geq 2$.

### 4.4 Extensions

We end the chapter with a small discussion on cohomology. As Tor is the natural start when considering left derived functors, Ext is the natural start for right derived functors. It is classical that when $M,N$ are two $R$-modules, $\operatorname{Ext}^1_R(M, N)$ classifies the short exact sequences of the form $0 \to N \to X \to M \to 0$. Such a s.e.s. is called an extension of $M$ by $N$. If we hope to define $\operatorname{Ext}^1$ for $A$-sets, looking at such sequences is a good place to start.

Let $X$ and $Y$ be $A$-sets. Define an extension $\xi$ of $X$ by $Y$ to be an admissible exact sequence of the form $0 \to Y \to E \to X \to 0$. Two extensions $\xi, \xi'$ are equivalent when there is a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \to & Y \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\
0 & \to & Y \\
\end{array}
\begin{array}{ccc}
E & \to & X \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
E' & \to & X \\
\end{array}
\]

Let $\operatorname{Ext}(X,Y)$ denote the set of all extensions of $X$ by $Y$.

Before attempting to describe $\operatorname{Ext}$, we provide an idea of what an extension looks like. Suppose $0 \to Y \xrightarrow{i} E \xrightarrow{p} X \to 0$ is an extension. Then $X$ is the quotient of $E$ by an $A$-subset $Y$ which simply identifies $Y$ with $0$; so $E \cong Y \vee X$ as pointed sets and we need only define an $A$-action on $E$. Let $\cdot$ denote the $A$-action on $E$. Since $Y$ is an $A$-subset, the action on the $Y$ (set-theoretic) summand determines the action on $i(Y)$. If $x \in X$ and $ax \neq 0$ for some $a \in A$, then $a \cdot p^{-1}(x) = p^{-1}(ax)$ since both map to the same element in $X$, namely $ax$, and $p$ is admissible. Therefore, the only freedom we have in defining an $A$-action on $E$ comes from pairs $e \in \operatorname{im}(p^{-1}(X))$ and $a \in A$ such what $ap(e) = 0$. We simply need to extend the determined action to the pairs $(a,e)$.

**Proposition 4.4.1.** Let $X,Y$ be $A$-sets and define $Z = \{a[x] \subseteq A[X] \mid ax = 0\}$. There is a one-to-one correspondence between extensions $0 \to Y \to E \to X \to 0$ and $A$-set morphisms $\varphi : Z \to Y$ such that $\varphi(ab[x]) = \varphi(a[bx])$ when $bx \neq 0$. 


Proof. First, let \( \xi \) denote the extension \( 0 \to Y \xrightarrow{i} E \xrightarrow{p} X \to 0 \) and let \( \cdot \) denote the \( A \)-action of \( E \). If \( a[x] \in Z \) is nonzero, then \( ax = 0 \) in \( X \) and \( p(a \cdot p^{-1}(x)) = ax = 0 \) so that \( a \cdot p^{-1}(x) \in i(Y) \) may be identified with an element of \( Y \). Define \( \varphi : Z \to Y \) by 
\[ \varphi(a[x]) = i^{-1}(a \cdot p^{-1}(x)) \] 
if \( a[x] \neq 0 \) and \( \varphi(0) = 0 \). Notice \( b \cdot p^{-1}(x) = p^{-1}(bx) \) whenever \( bx \neq 0 \) so that 
\[ \varphi(ab[x]) = i^{-1}((ab) \cdot p^{-1}(x)) = i^{-1}(a \cdot p^{-1}(bx)) = \varphi(a[bx]) \] 
as desired. Since \( i^{-1} \) is an \( A \)-set map on \( i(Y) \), when \( ab \neq 0 \) in \( A \) we have 
\[ \varphi(ab[x]) = i^{-1}((ab) \cdot p^{-1}(x)) = bi^{-1}(a \cdot p^{-1}(x)) = b\varphi(a[x]). \] 
Now, if \( ab = 0 \) and say \( a[x] \in Z \), then \( \varphi(ab[x]) = \varphi(0[x]) = 0 \) and 
\[ b\varphi(a[x]) = bi^{-1}(a \cdot p^{-1}(x)) = i^{-1}((ab) \cdot p^{-1}(x))i^{-1}(0 \cdot p^{-1}(x)) = 0 \] 
as well. This shows \( \varphi \) is an \( A \)-set morphism and defines a function \( \Phi \) which assigns to each extension \( \xi \) a map \( \varphi = \Phi(\xi) \).

Conversely, let \( \varphi : Z \to Y \) be an \( A \)-set morphism satisfying \( \varphi(ab[x]) = \varphi(a[bx]) \) when \( bx \neq 0 \). From the pushout diagram
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
Z & \longrightarrow & A[X] \\
\varphi \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi \\
Y & \longrightarrow & Y \vee_{Z} A[X]
\end{array}
\]
define \( E = (Y \amalg_{Z} A[X]) \sim \) where \( \sim \) is the equivalence relation generated by the relations \( ab[x] \sim a[bx] \) whenever \( bx \neq 0 \). Let \( i \) be the composition \( Y \to Y \vee_{Z} A[X] \xrightarrow{\pi} E \). To show \( i \) is monic we need only show \( \pi \) is monic since the first map of the composition is the pushout of the inclusion \( Z \to A[X] \), hence monic. Let \( y_1, y_2 \in Y \) be such that \( \pi(y_1) = \pi(y_2) \) in \( E \). This can only happen when \( y_1 = \varphi(a[x]) = a[x] \), \( y_2 = \varphi(b[x']) = b[x'] \) where \( a[x], b[x'] \in Z \) and \( a[x] \sim b[x'] \). Now \( a[x] \sim b[x'] \) if there is a \( c \in A \) such that \( a = bc \) and \( x' = cx' \), so
\[ a[x] = bc[x] \sim b[cx] = b[x'] \]
or \( b = ac \) and \( x = cx' \), so
\[ b[x'] = ac[x'] \sim a[cx'] = a[x]. \]
In the first case, \( \varphi(bc[x]) = \varphi(b[cx]) \) by assumption on \( \varphi \) so \( y_1 = \varphi(a[x]) = \varphi(b[x']) = y_2 \). The latter case is identical, hence \( i \) is monic. In fact, \( i \) is just the inclusion \( y \mapsto y \).

Let \( f \) be the composition \( A[X] \to Y \coprod_Z A[X] \to E \) and notice that \( E = i(Y) \cup \text{im}(f) \) with \( i \) defined as above. Let \( p : E \to X \) be a map defined via the restrictions \( i(Y) \xrightarrow{0} X \) and \( \text{im}(f) \to X \) given by \( a[x] \mapsto ax \). Since \( i(Y) \cap \text{im}(f) \subseteq Z \), the map is well defined and is an admissible \( A \)-set morphism with \( \ker(p) = i(Y) \cong Y \). Hence, \( E/Y \cong X \) and fits into an a.e.s. \( 0 \to Y \xrightarrow{i} E \xrightarrow{p} X \to 0 \). Note this constructions provides a function \( \Xi \) which assigns to each map \( \varphi : Z \to Y \) an extension \( \xi = \Xi(\varphi) \).

We now proceed to show that there is a one-to-one correspondence between isomorphism classes of extensions and maps \( \varphi : Z \to Y \). To this end we show \( \Phi \) and \( \Xi \) are inverses. We first show \( \xi \cong (\Xi \circ \Phi)(\xi) \).

Let \( \xi \) be the extension \( 0 \to Y \xrightarrow{i} E \xrightarrow{p} X \to 0 \), \( \varphi = \Phi(\xi) \) and \( \xi' = \Xi(\varphi) \) the extension \( 0 \to Y \to E' \to X \to 0 \). Again, let \( \cdot \) denote the \( A \)-action of \( E \). Define \( \psi : E' \to E \) by the restrictions \( \psi|_Y = i \) and \( \psi([x]) = p^{-1}(x) \) otherwise. It is clear that \( \psi_Y \) is an \( A \)-set morphism and \( \psi(a[x]) = a \cdot \psi([x]) \) whenever \( ax \neq 0 \) in \( X \). Therefore, we simply need to show that \( \psi(a[x]) = a \cdot \psi([x]) \) whenever \( [x] \in E' \setminus Y \) and \( ax = 0 \). In this case \( a[x] = \varphi(a[x]) = i^{-1}(a \cdot p^{-1}(x)) \) in \( E' = \Xi(\varphi) \) and

\[
\psi(a[x]) = \psi(i^{-1}(a \cdot p^{-1}(x))) = a \cdot p^{-1}(x) = a \cdot \psi([x]).
\]

That \( \varphi \) is surjective is clear and since \( i, p^{-1} \) are monic, \( \varphi \) is an isomorphism.

Conversely, given a map \( \varphi : Z \to Y \) with \( \varphi(ab[x]) = \varphi(a[bx]) \) when \( bx \neq 0 \) in \( X \), let \( \xi = \Xi(\varphi) \) be the extension \( 0 \to Y \to E \to X \to 0 \), and \( \varphi' = \Phi(\xi) \). Noting that \( Y \to E \) is just the inclusion \( y \mapsto y \) and \( E \to X \) is the projection \( e \mapsto e \) when \( e \in E \setminus Y \) and \( e \mapsto 0 \) otherwise, we have \( \varphi'(a[x]) = a \cdot p^{-1}(x) = a \cdot x = \varphi(a[x]) \) when \( ax \neq 0 \) in \( X \).

One reason simplicial \( A \)-sets are needed when computing left derived functors is that not every \( A \)-set had a projective resolution by admissible morphisms. However, every \( A \)-set does have an injective resolution by admissible morphisms. That is, if \( X \) is an \( A \)-set, it is shown in [2, Thm. 6] that \( E = \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{F}_1}(A, X) \) is an injective \( A \)-set with action \( a \cdot f(a') = f(aa') \) for \( a \in A \) and \( f \in E \); then \( X \hookrightarrow E \) defined by \( x \mapsto (1 \mapsto x) \) is an inclusion. Since every injection is admissible and cokernels exist, we can construct
an injective resolution

\[ 0 \to E_0 \xrightarrow{f_0} E_1 \xrightarrow{f_1} E_2 \xrightarrow{f_2} \cdots \]

where \( X = \ker(E_0 \to E_1) \) and \( E_{n+1} \) is an injective containing the cokernel of the inclusion \( \text{coker}(f_{n-1}) \hookrightarrow E_n \). However, applying \( \text{Hom}_A(Y, -) \) and computing \( H_1 \) in the usual way, i.e. kernel modulo image, does not provide the classification for extensions found above.

Whenever \( C \) is a model category, \( C^{op} \) is as well by dualizing the definitions for fibration, etc.. Following this reasoning the correct setting for computing right derived functors may be found by dualizing the definitions for the model structure on \( \Delta^{op} A\text{-sets} \) to \( (\Delta^{op} A\text{-sets})^{op} = \Delta A\text{-sets} \), the category of cosimplicial \( A \)-sets. However, we point out that such a model structure provides homotopy groups, but the description of extensions given in Proposition 4.4.1 shows that \( \text{Ext}(Y, X) \) is an \( A \)-set and generally not a group. Therefore we should not expect to obtain \( \text{Ext}(Y, X) \) explicitly as a \((n^{th})\) derived functor. Instead, in light of the \( \text{Tor}_1 \) computation, we should hope to find a group for which the elements of \( \text{Ext}(Y, X) \) are the generators.

There is a way to produce monoid extensions via a “cocyle condition.” The following construction is an adaptation of the cosimplicial Hochschild object constructed in [23, 9.1]. Note that a cosimplicial \( A \)-set \( X \) is a functor \( X : \Delta \to A\text{-sets} \) and a morphism of two cosimplicial \( A \)-sets is a natural transformation. The cosimplicial identities involving the coface \( (\partial^i) \) and codegeneracy \( (\sigma_j) \) maps are equivalent to identities for the face \( (\varepsilon_i) \) and degeneracy \( (\eta_j) \) maps of \( \Delta \) listed in Section 3.4.1.

Let \( A \) be a monoid and \( X \) an \( A \)-set. Define \( \text{Hom}(A^{\wedge^*}, X) \) to be the cosimplicial \( \mathbb{F}_1 \)-set with \( \text{Hom}(A^{\wedge^*}, X)^n = \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{F}_1}(A^{\wedge^n}, X) \) for \( n \geq 1 \) and \( \text{Hom}(A^{\wedge^0}, X)^0 = X \), together with coface and codegeneracy maps given by

\[
(\partial^i f)(a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n) = \begin{cases} 
 a_0 f(a_1, \ldots, a_n) & \text{if } i = 0, \\
 f(a_0, \ldots, a_{i-1}a_i, \ldots, a_n) & \text{if } 0 < i < n, \\
 a_n f(a_0, \ldots, a_{n-1}) & \text{if } i = n. 
\end{cases}
\]

\[
(\sigma_j f)(a_1, \ldots, a_{n-1}) = f(a_1, \ldots, a_i, 1, a_{i+1}, \ldots, a_{n-1})
\]

In the case where \( R \) is a \( k \)-algebra and \( M \) is an \( R \)-module, the cosimplicial \( k \)-module
Hom($R^\otimes$, $M$) may be considered a cochain complex with coboundary maps the alternating sums $d^n = \sum_i (-1)^i \partial^i$, $n \geq 0$. For an $A$-set $X$, the coboundary map $d^n$ is not defined for Hom($A^\wedge$, $X^n$), but we can make sense of the kernel on a $\mathbb{F}_1$-subset.

**Definition 4.4.2.** Write $C^n(A, X)$ for the collection of all $f$ in Hom($A^\wedge$, $X^n$) which satisfy the following. For each $(a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n)$ in $A^\wedge n$, there is at most one odd and one even value of $i$ for which $(\partial^i f)(a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n)$ may be nonzero. We call an element $f \in C^n(A, X)$ a $n$-cocyle if for every $(a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n) \in A^\wedge n$, we have

$$(\partial^{2j} f)(a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n) = (\partial^{2k+1} f)(a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n)$$

where $0 \leq 2j, 2k + 1 \leq n$ are the values of $i$ for which $(\partial^i f)(a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n)$ may be nonzero.

**Lemma 4.4.3.** If $f \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{F}_1}(A^\wedge, X)^2$ satisfies $f(a, b) = 0$ whenever $ab \neq 0$ in $A$, then $f \in C^2(A, X)$.

**Proof.** Let $f \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{F}_1}(A^\wedge, X)^2$ satisfy $f(a, b) = 0$ when $ab \neq 0$. For any $a, b, c \in A$, we need to show that $(\partial^i f)(a, b, c) = 0$ for at least one odd and one even value of $i$. This simply requires us to check all possible cases which are summarized in the table below. Note also that $(a, b) = 0$ in $A \wedge A$ when either $a = 0$ or $b = 0$ (or both), and $f(0) = 0$ for any pointed set map.

First suppose that $ab = 0$. Then $(\partial^1 f)(a, b, c) = f(ab, c) = f(0, c) = 0$. When $bc = 0$, we have $(\partial^2 f)(a, b, c) = f(a, bc) = f(a, 0) = 0$ and when $bc \neq 0$, we have $(\partial^0 f)(a, b, c) = af(b, c) = 0$ by assumption on $f$.

Now suppose $ab \neq 0$. It is immediate that $(\partial^3 f)(a, b, c) = cf(a, b) = 0$, again by assumption on $f$. Finally, as above, when $bc = 0$, $\partial^2 f = 0$ and when $bc \neq 0$, then $\partial^0 f = 0$. The following table provides a brief summary.
An entry is 0 when the value is zero, 1 when the value is non-zero and * otherwise.

Let $A$ be a monoid and $X$ an $A$-set. A square zero extension of $A$ by $X$ is a noncommutative monoid $E$ and an admissible, surjective monoid morphism $\varepsilon : E \to A$ such that $\ker(\varepsilon)$ is a square zero ideal (i.e. $ab = 0$ for all $a,b \in \ker(\varepsilon)$) together with an $A$-set isomorphism $X \cong \ker(\varepsilon)$. A square zero extension is commutative when $E$ is a (commutative) monoid.

**Proposition 4.4.4.** Let $A$ be a monoid, $X$ an $A$-set and

$$K = \{ f \in \Hom(A^{\times}, X) \ | \ f(a, b) = 0 \text{ whenever } ab \neq 0 \text{ in } X \} \subseteq C^2(A, X).$$

Then the 2-cocyles in $K$ are in one-to-one correspondence with the square zero extensions of $A$ by $X$. Furthermore, if $K_c \subseteq K$ consists of all elements $f$ of $K$ satisfying $f(a, b) = f(b, a)$, then the commutative square zero extensions are in one-to-one correspondence with the elements of $K_c$.

**Proof.** Let $A$ be a monoid, $X$ an $A$-set and $\xi : X \hookrightarrow E \to A$ an extension of $A$ by $X$. Write $\cdot$ for the multiplication in $E$. Similar to Proposition 4.4.1, we have $E = A \vee X$ as pointed sets and the multiplicative structure of $E$ is determined everywhere except for the set $Z = \{(a, b) \in A \wedge A \mid ab = 0\}$. For fixed $f$ in $K$, we show that the multiplication

$$a \cdot b := \begin{cases} ab & \text{if } ab \neq 0, \\ f(a, b) & \text{if } ab = 0. \end{cases}$$
defines an extension $\xi$ by defining the products $a \cdot b$ in $E$ for every pair $(a, b)$ in $Z$.

That is, once $f$ is verified to complete a multiplicative structure on the set $A \lor X$, the surjective monoid map $E \to A$ sending every element of $X \subseteq E$ to 0 defines an extension.

It suffices to show that the multiplication given by $f$ is associative since 1 is not a zero divisor of $A$ and commutativity is given by assumption. We must consider cases each of which follows from a row of the table given in the proof Lemma 4.4.3. The properties $f$ satisfies are:

i) $af(b, c) = f(ab, c)$ when $bc = 0, ab \neq 0$,

ii) $f(a, bc) = cf(a, b)$ when $ab = 0, bc \neq 0$,

iii) $f(ab, c) = f(a, bc)$ when $ac = 0, ab, bc \neq 0$, and

iv) $af(b, c) = cf(a, b)$ when $ab, ac, bc = 0$.

Now, let $a, b, c$ be elements of $A$ and consider the product $a \cdot (b \cdot c)$ in $E$. If $bc = 0$ and $ab \neq 0$ in $A$, then

$$a \cdot (b \cdot c) = af(b, c) = f(ab, c) = (ab) \cdot c = (a \cdot b) \cdot c$$

by (i). If $ab = 0$ as well, then

$$a \cdot (b \cdot c) = af(b, c) = f(a, b)c = (a \cdot b) \cdot c$$

by (iv) and the commutativity of $X$ as an $A$-set. On the other hand, when $bc \neq 0$ in $A$ and $ab = 0$, we have

$$a \cdot (b \cdot c) = a \cdot (bc) = f(a, bc) = f(a, b)c = (a \cdot b) \cdot c$$

by (ii) and the commutativity of $X$ as an $A$-set. Finally, when $ab \neq 0$, we have

$$a \cdot (b \cdot c) = a \cdot (bc) = f(a, bc) = f(ab, c) = (ab) \cdot c = (a \cdot b) \cdot c$$

by (iii). Hence, $f$ defines an extension $\xi = \Phi(f)$. Conversely, if we are given an extension $\xi : X \to E \to A$, we obtain a 2-cocycle $f = \Psi(\xi) : A \wedge A \to X$ of $K$ by

$$f(a, b) := \begin{cases} 
0 & \text{if } ab \neq 0, \\
\ a \cdot b & \text{if } ab = 0.
\end{cases}$$
Of course, when \( ab = 0 \) in \( A \), it must be that \( a \cdot b \in \ker(E \to A) \cong X \). Hence, it is clear that this \( f \) is a 2-cocycle and an element of \( K \).

It also straightforward to show that the operations \( \Phi \) and \( \Psi \) are inverses. If \( f \) is in \( K \), \( \Phi(f) : X \hookrightarrow E \to A \) is an extension where \( a \cdot b := f(a, b) \) in \( E \) whenever \( ab = 0 \) in \( A \), and

\[
(\Psi \circ \Phi)(f)(a, b) := \begin{cases} 
0 & \text{if } ab \neq 0, \\
a \cdot b = f(a, b) & \text{if } ab = 0
\end{cases}
\]

is precisely \( f \). Conversely, given an extension \( \xi : X \hookrightarrow E \to A \), \( \Psi(\xi) : A \wedge A \to X \) is the 2-cocycle of \( K \) defined by

\[
\Psi(\xi) := \begin{cases} 
0 & \text{if } ab \neq 0, \\
a \cdot b & \text{if } ab = 0.
\end{cases}
\]

Write \( X \hookrightarrow E' \to A \) for the extension \( (\Phi \circ \Psi)(\xi) \) and \( \cdot' \) for the multiplication of \( E' \). Then \( a \cdot' b = \Psi(\xi)(a, b) = a \cdot b \) is precisely the multiplicative structure of \( E \). \( \Box \)
Chapter 5

Geometry of monoids

The topics discussed in the chapter all require the language of monoid schemes. Perhaps the reader familiar with commutative ring theory noticed the absence of a discussion on normalization in Chapter 2. Of course the reason is that the normalization of a monoid need not be a monoid, but rather a monoid scheme. The chapter as a whole presents some basic results on the Picard group of a monoid scheme and the Weil divisor class group of a normal monoid scheme. These results are taken from [9]. For more information on monoid schemes see [3], [5], [6] and [22].

Recall that the set of prime ideals of a monoid $A$ is written $\text{MSpec}(A)$ and forms a topological space using the Zariski topology. On $\text{MSpec}(A)$ the structure sheaf $\mathcal{A}$ has stalk $\mathcal{A}_p$ at the point $p$. An affine monoid scheme is the topological space $\text{MSpec}(A)$ together with its structure sheaf $\mathcal{A}$. A monoid scheme is a topological space $X$ together with a sheaf of monoids $\mathcal{F}$ that is locally affine.

5.1 Normalization

If $A$ is a cancellative monoid, its normalization is the integral closure of $A$ in its group completion $A_0$ and is universal for maps $A \to B$ with $B$ normal (see Lemma 5.1.1). In contrast, consider the problem of defining the normalization of a non-cancellative monoid $A$, which should be something which has a kind of universal property for morphisms $A \to B$ with $B$ normal.

We will restrict ourselves to the case when the monoid $A$ is partially cancellative (or pc), i.e., a quotient $A = C/I$ of a cancellative monoid $C$ ([6, 1.3, 1.20]). One advantage is that $A/p$ is cancellative for every prime ideal $p$ of a pc monoid, and the normalization $(A/p)_{\text{nor}}$ of $A/p$ exists.
Lemma 5.1.1. If $A$ is a pc monoid and $f : A \to B$ is a morphism with $B$ normal, then $f$ factors through the normalization of $A/\mathfrak{p}$, where $\mathfrak{p} = \ker(f)$.

Proof. The morphism $A/\mathfrak{p} \to B$ of cancellative monoids induces a homomorphism $f_0 : (A/\mathfrak{p})_0 \to B_0$ of their group completions. If $a \in (A/\mathfrak{p})_0$ belongs to $(A/\mathfrak{p})_{\text{nor}}$ then there is an $n$ so that $a^n \in A/\mathfrak{p}$. Then $b = f_0(a) \in B_0$ satisfies $b^n \in B$, so $b \in B$. Thus $f_0$ restricts to a map $(A/\mathfrak{p})_{\text{nor}} \to B$.

Remark 5.1.2. The non-pc monoid $A = \langle x, y, z \mid xz = yz \rangle$ is non-cancellative, reduced (2.6.3) and even seminormal (see after Example 5.1.6), yet has no one obvious notion of normalization in either the above sense or in the sense of Definition 5.1.3 below, since $0$ is a prime ideal. We have restricted to pc monoids in order to avoid these issues.

Thus the collection of maps $A \to (A/\mathfrak{p})_{\text{nor}}$ has a versal property: every morphism $A \to B$ with $B$ normal factors through one of these maps. However, a strict universal property is not possible within the category of monoids because monoids are local. This is illustrated by the monoid $A = \langle x_1, x_2 \mid x_1x_2 = 0 \rangle$; see Example 5.1.6 below. Following the example of algebraic geometry, we will pass to the category of (pc) monoid schemes, where the normalization exists.

Definition 5.1.3. Let $A$ be a pc monoid. The normalization $X_{\text{nor}}$ of $X = \text{MSpec}(A)$ is the disjoint union of the monoid schemes $\text{MSpec}((A/\mathfrak{p})_{\text{nor}})$ as $\mathfrak{p}$ runs over the minimal primes of $A$. By abuse of notation, we will refer to $X_{\text{nor}}$ as the normalization of $A$.

This notion is stable under localization: the normalization of $U = \text{MSpec}(A[1/s])$ is an open subscheme of the normalization of $\text{MSpec}(A)$; by Lemma 2.7.2, its components are $\text{MSpec}$ of the normalizations of the $(A/\mathfrak{p})[1/s]$ for those minimal primes $\mathfrak{p}$ of $A$ not containing $s$.

If $X$ is a pc monoid scheme, covered by affine opens $U_i$, one can glue the normalizations $\tilde{U}_i$ to obtain a normal monoid scheme $X_{\text{nor}}$, called the normalization of $X$.

Remark 5.1.4. The normalization $X_{\text{nor}}$ is a normal monoid scheme: the stalks of $A_{\text{nor}}$ are normal monoids. It has the universal property that for every connected normal monoid scheme $Z$, every $Z \to X$ dominant on a component factors uniquely through $X_{\text{nor}} \to X$. As this is exactly like [16, Ex. II.3.8], we omit the details.
Recall that the (categorical) product \( A \times B \) of two pointed monoids is the set-theoretic product with slotwise product and basepoint \((0, 0)\).

**Lemma 5.1.5.** Let \( A \) be a pc monoid. The monoid of global sections \( H^0(X_{\text{nor}}, A_{\text{nor}}) \) of the normalization of \( A \) is the product of the pointed monoids \((A/p)_{\text{nor}}\) as \( p \) runs over the minimal primes of \( A \).

**Proof.** For any sheaf \( \mathcal{F} \) on a disjoint union \( X = \coprod X_i \), \( H^0(X, \mathcal{F}) = \prod H^0(X_i, \mathcal{F}) \) by the sheaf axiom.

**Example 5.1.6.** The normalization of \( A = \langle x_1, x_2 \mid x_1 x_2 = 0 \rangle \) is the disjoint union of the affine lines \( \langle x_i \rangle \). The monoid of its global sections is \( \langle x_1 \rangle \times \langle x_2 \rangle \), and is generated by \((1, 0), (0, 1), (x_1, 1), (1, x_2)\).

**Seminormalization**

Recall from [6, 1.7] that a reduced monoid \( A \) is seminormal if whenever \( b,c \in A \) satisfy \( b^3 = c^2 \) there is an \( a \in A \) such that \( a^2 = b \) and \( a^3 = c \). Any normal monoid is seminormal, and \( \langle x, y \mid xy = 0 \rangle \) is seminormal but not normal. The passage from monoids to seminormal monoids (and monoid schemes) was critical in [6] for understanding the behaviour of cyclic bar constructions under the resolution of singularities of a pc monoid scheme.

The *seminormalization* of a monoid \( A \) is a seminormal monoid \( A_{\text{sn}} \), together with an injective map \( A_{\text{red}} \to A_{\text{sn}} \) such that every \( b \in A_{\text{sn}} \) has \( b^n \in A_{\text{red}} \) for all \( n \gg 0 \). If it exists, it is unique up to isomorphism, and any monoid map \( A \to C \) with \( C \) seminormal factors uniquely through \( A_{\text{sn}} \); see [6, 1.11]. In particular, the seminormalization of \( A \) lies between \( A \) and its normalization, i.e., \( \text{MSpec}(A)_{\text{nor}} \to \text{MSpec}(A) \) factors through \( \text{MSpec}(A_{\text{sn}}) \).

We shall restrict ourselves to the seminormalization of pc monoids (and monoid schemes). By [6, 1.15], if \( A \) is a pc monoid, the seminormalization of \( A \) exists and is a pc monoid. When \( A \) is cancellative, \( A_{\text{sn}} \) is easy to construct.

**Example 5.1.7.** When \( A \) is cancellative, \( A_{\text{sn}} = \{ b \in A_0 : b^n \in A \text{ for } n \gg 0 \} \); this is a submonoid of \( A_{\text{nor}} \), and \( A_{\text{nor}} = (A_{\text{sn}})_{\text{nor}} \). Since the normalization of a cancellative
monoid induces a homeomorphism on the topological spaces MSpec [5, 1.6.1], so does the seminormalization.

If $A$ has more than one minimal prime, then $\text{MSpec}(A)_{\text{nor}} \to \text{MSpec}(A)$ cannot be a bijection. However, we do have the following result.

**Lemma 5.1.8.** For every pc monoid $A$, $\text{MSpec}(A_{\text{sn}}) \to \text{MSpec}(A)$ is a homeomorphism of the underlying topological spaces.

**Proof.** Write $A = C/I$ for a cancellative monoid $C$, so $\text{MSpec}(A)$ is the closed subspace of $\text{MSpec}(C)$ defined by $I$. By [6, 1.14], $A_{\text{sn}} = C_{\text{sn}}/(IC_{\text{sn}})$. Thus $\text{MSpec}(A_{\text{sn}})$ is the closed subspace of $\text{MSpec}(C_{\text{sn}})$ defined by $I$. Since $\text{MSpec}(C_{\text{sn}}) \to \text{MSpec}(C)$ is a homeomorphism (by 5.1.7), the result follows.

The seminormalization of any pc monoid scheme may be constructed by glueing, since the seminormalization of $A$ commutes with localization [6, 1.13]. Thus if $X$ is a pc monoid scheme then there are canonical maps

$$X_{\text{nor}} \to X_{\text{sn}} \to X_{\text{red}} \to X,$$

and $X_{\text{sn}} \to X$ is a homeomorphism by Lemma 5.1.8. We will use $X_{\text{sn}}$ to discuss the Picard group $\text{Pic}(X)$ in Proposition 5.5.1 below.

### 5.2 Weil divisors

Although the theory of Weil divisors is already interesting for normal monoids, it is useful to state it for normal monoid schemes.

Let $X$ be a normal monoid scheme with generic monoid $A_0$. Corollary 2.7.6 states that the stalk $\mathcal{A}_x$ is a DV monoid (see after Lemma 2.7.4) for every height one point $x$ of $X$. When $X$ is separated, a discrete valuation on $A_0$ uniquely determines a point $x$ of $X$ [5, 8.9].

By a *Weil divisor* on $X$ we mean an element of the free abelian group $\text{Div}(X)$ generated by the height one points of $X$. We define the divisor of $a \in A_0^*$ to be the
sum, taken over all height one points of $X$:

$$\text{div}(a) = \sum_x v_x(a)x.$$ 

When $X = \text{MSpec}(A)$ is of finite type, there are only finitely many prime ideals in $A$, so this is a finite sum. Divisors of the form $\text{div}(a)$ are called principal divisors. Since $v_x(ab) = v_x(a) + v_x(b)$, the function $\text{div} : A^x_0 \to \text{Div}(X)$ is a group homomorphism, and the principal divisors form a subgroup of $\text{Div}(X)$.

**Definition 5.2.1.** The Weil divisor class group of $X$, written as $\text{Cl}(X)$, is the quotient of $\text{Div}(X)$ by the subgroup of principal divisors.

**Lemma 5.2.2.** If $X$ is a normal monoid scheme of finite type, there is an exact sequence

$$1 \to \mathcal{A}(X)^x \to A^x_0 \xrightarrow{\text{div}} \text{Div}(X) \to \text{Cl}(X) \to 0.$$

**Proof.** We may suppose that $X$ is connected. It suffices to show that if $a \in A^x_0$ has $\text{div}(a) = 0$ then $a \in \mathcal{A}(X)^x$. This follows from Theorem 2.7.9: when $X = \text{MSpec}(A)$, $A$ is the intersection of the $A_x$.

**Example 5.2.3.** (Cf. [16, II.6.5.2]) Let $A$ be the submonoid of $\mathbb{Z}^2_+$ generated by $x = (1, 0)$, $y = (1, 2)$ and $z = (1, 1)$, and set $X = \text{MSpec}(A)$. (This is the toric monoid scheme $xy = z^2$.) Then $A$ has exactly two prime ideals of height one: $p_1 = (x, z)$ and $p_2 = (y, z)$. Since $\text{div}(x) = 2p_1$ and $\text{div}(z) = p_1 + p_2$, we see that $\text{Cl}(X) = \mathbb{Z}/2$.

**Example 5.2.4.** If $X$ is the non-separated monoid scheme obtained by gluing together $n + 1$ copies of $\mathbb{A}^1$ along the common (open) generic point, then $\text{Cl}(X) = \mathbb{Z}^n$, as we see from Lemma 5.2.2.

If $U$ is an open subscheme of $X$, with complement $Z$, the standard argument [16, II.6.5] shows that there is a surjection $\text{Cl}(X) \to \text{Cl}(U)$, that it is an isomorphism if $Z$ has codimension $\geq 2$, and that if $Z$ is the closure of a height one point $z$ then there is an exact sequence

$$Z \xrightarrow{\cdot z} \text{Cl}(X) \to \text{Cl}(U) \to 0.$$

**Proposition 5.2.5.** $\text{Cl}(X_1 \times X_2) = \text{Cl}(X_1) \oplus \text{Cl}(X_2)$. 


Proof. By [5, 3.1], the product monoid scheme exists, and its underlying topological space is the product. Thus a codimension one point of $X_1 \times X_2$ is either of the form $x_1 \times X_2$ or $X_1 \times x_2$. Hence $\text{Div}(X_1 \times X_2) \cong \text{Div}(X_1) \oplus \text{Div}(X_2)$. It follows from Lemma 2.7.4 that $X_1 \times X_2$ is normal, and the pointed monoid at its generic point is the smash product of the pointed monoids $A_1$ and $A_2$ of $X_1$ and $X_2$ at their generic points. If $a_i \in A_i$ then the principal divisor of $a_1 \wedge a_2$ is $\text{div}(a_1) + \text{div}(a_2)$. Thus

$$\text{Cl}(X_1 \times X_2) = \frac{\text{Div}(X_1) \oplus \text{Div}(X_2)}{\text{div}(A_1^\times) \oplus \text{div}(A_2^\times)} \cong \text{Cl}(X_1) \oplus \text{Cl}(X_2).$$

Example 5.2.6. By [5, 4.5], any connected separated normal monoid scheme $X$ decomposes as the product of a toric monoid scheme $X_\Delta$ and $\text{MSpec}(U_\ast)$ for some finite abelian group $U$. ($U$ is the group of global units of $X$.) Since $U_\ast$ has no height one primes, $\text{Div}(X) = \text{Div}(X_\Delta)$ and the Weil class group of $X$ is $\text{Cl}(X_\Delta)$, the Weil class group of the associated toric monoid scheme.

By construction [5, 4.2], the points of $X_\Delta$ correspond to the cones of the fan $\Delta$ and the height one points of $X_\Delta$ correspond to the edges in the fan. Thus our Weil divisors correspond naturally to what Fulton calls a “$T$-Weil divisor” on the associated toric variety $X_k$ (over a field $k$) in [8, 3.3]. Since the group completion $A_0$ is the free abelian group $M$ associated to $\Delta$, it follows from [8, 3.4] that our Weil divisor class group $\text{Cl}(X_\Delta)$ is isomorphic to the Weil divisor class group $\text{Cl}(X_k)$ of associated toric variety.
5.3 Invertible sheaves

Let $X$ be a monoid scheme with structure sheaf $\mathcal{A}$. An invertible sheaf on $X$ is a sheaf $\mathcal{L}$ of $\mathcal{A}$-sets which is locally isomorphic to $\mathcal{A}$ in the Zariski topology. If $\mathcal{L}_1, \mathcal{L}_2$ are invertible sheaves, their smash product is the sheafification of the presheaf $U \mapsto \mathcal{L}_1(U) \wedge_{\mathcal{A}(U)} \mathcal{L}_2(U)$; it is again an invertible sheaf. Similarly, $\mathcal{L}^{-1}$ is the sheafification of $U \mapsto \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\mathcal{L}(U), \mathcal{A}(U))$, and evaluation $\mathcal{L} \wedge_{\mathcal{A}} \mathcal{L}^{-1} \iso \mathcal{A}$ is an isomorphism. Thus the set of isomorphism classes of invertible sheaves on $X$ is a group under the smash product.

Definition 5.3.1. The Picard group $\text{Pic}(X)$ is the group of isomorphism classes of invertible sheaves on $X$.

Since a monoid $A$ has a unique maximal ideal (the non-units), an invertible sheaf on $\text{MSpec}(A)$ is just an $A$-set isomorphic to $A$. This proves:

Lemma 5.3.2. For every affine monoid scheme $X = \text{MSpec}(A)$, $\text{Pic}(X) = 0$.

For any monoid $A$, the group of $A$-set automorphisms of $A$ is canonically isomorphic to $A^\times$. Since the subsheaf $\Gamma$ of generators of an invertible sheaf $\mathcal{L}$ is a torsor for $A^\times$, and $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{A} \wedge_{A^\times} \Gamma$, this proves:

Lemma 5.3.3. $\text{Pic}(X) \iso H^1(X, A^\times)$.

Recall that a morphism $f : Y \to X$ of monoid schemes is affine if $f^{-1}(U)$ is affine for every affine open $U$ in $X$; see [5, 6.2].

Proposition 5.3.4. If $f : Y \to X$ is an affine morphism of monoid schemes, then the direct image $f_*$ is an exact functor from sheaves (of abelian groups) on $Y$ to sheaves on $X$. In particular, $H^*(Y, \mathcal{L}) \iso H^*(X, p_*\mathcal{L})$ for every sheaf $\mathcal{L}$ on $Y$.

Proof. Suppose that $0 \to \mathcal{L}' \to \mathcal{L} \to \mathcal{L}'' \to 0$ is an exact sequence of sheaves on $Y$. Fix an affine open $U = \text{MSpec}(A)$ of $X$ with closed point $x \in X$. Then $f^{-1}(U) = \text{MSpec}(B)$ for some monoid $B$. If $y \in Y$ is the unique closed point of $\text{MSpec}(B)$ the stalk sequence $0 \to \mathcal{L}'_y \to \mathcal{L}_y \to \mathcal{L}''_y \to 0$ is exact. Since this is the stalk sequence at $x$ of $0 \to f_*\mathcal{L}' \to f_*\mathcal{L} \to f_*\mathcal{L}'' \to 0$, the direct image sequence is exact.
Here is an application, showing one way in which monoid schemes differ from schemes. Let $T$ denote the free (pointed) monoid on one generator $t$, and let $\mathbb{A}^1$ denote $\text{MSpec}(T)$. Then $A \wedge T$ is the analogue of a polynomial ring over $A$, and $X \times \mathbb{A}^1$ is the monoid scheme which is locally $\text{MSpec}(A) \times \mathbb{A}^1 = \text{MSpec}(A \wedge T)$; see [5, 3.1]. Thus $p : X \times \mathbb{A}^1 \to X$ is affine, and $f_*A_X^\times = A_{X_0}^\times$. From Proposition 5.3.4 we deduce

**Corollary 5.3.5.** For every monoid scheme $X$, $\text{Pic}(X) \cong \text{Pic}(X \times \mathbb{A}^1)$.

### 5.4 Cartier divisors

Let $(X, \mathcal{A})$ be a cancellative monoid scheme. We write $A_0$ for the stalk of $\mathcal{A}$ at the generic point of $X$, and $\mathcal{A}_0$ for the associated constant sheaf. A *Cartier divisor* on $X$ is a global section of the sheaf of groups $A_0^\times / \mathcal{A}^\times$. On each affine open $U$, it is given by an $a_U \in A_0^\times$ up to a unit in $A(U)^\times$, and we have the usual representation as $\{(U, a_U)\}$ with $a_U a_V$ in $A(U \cap V)^\times$. We write $\text{Cart}(X)$ for the group of Cartier divisors on $X$. The *principal* Cartier divisors, i.e., those represented by some $a \in A_0^\times$, form a subgroup of $\text{Cart}(X)$.

**Proposition 5.4.1.** Let $X$ be a cancellative monoid scheme. Then the map $D \mapsto \mathcal{L}(D)$ defines an isomorphism between the group of Cartier divisors modulo principal divisors and $\text{Pic}(X)$.

**Proof.** Consider the short exact sequence of sheaves of abelian groups

$$1 \to A^\times \to A_0^\times \to A_0^\times / A^\times \to 1.$$ 

Since $A_0^\times$ is constant and $X$ is irreducible we have $H^1(X, A_0^\times) = 0$ [16, III.2.5]. By Lemma 5.3.3, the cohomology sequence becomes:

$$0 \to A(X)^\times \to A_0^\times \xrightarrow{\text{div}} \text{Cart}(X) \xrightarrow{\delta} \text{Pic}(X) \to 0.$$ 

**Example 5.4.2.** If $D$ is a Cartier divisor on a cancellative monoid scheme $X$, represented by $\{(U, a_U)\}$, we define a subsheaf $\mathcal{L}(D)$ of the constant sheaf $\mathcal{A}_0$ by letting its restriction to $U$ be generated by $a_U^{-1}$. This is well defined because $a_U^{-1}$ and $a_V^{-1}$ generate the same subsheaf on $U \cap V$. The usual argument [16, II.6.13] shows that $D \mapsto \mathcal{L}(D)$
defines an isomorphism from $\text{Cart}(X)$ to the group of invertible subsheaves of $A_0^X$. By inspection, the map $\delta$ in 5.4.1 sends $D$ to $\mathcal{L}(D)$.

**Lemma 5.4.3.** If $X$ is a normal monoid scheme of finite type, $\text{Pic}(X)$ is a subgroup of $\text{Cl}(X)$.

**Proof.** Every Cartier divisor $D = \{(U, a_U)\}$ determines a Weil divisor; the restriction of $D$ to $U$ is the divisor of $a_U$. It is easy to see that this makes the Cartier divisors into a subgroup of the Weil divisor class group $D(X)$, under which principal Cartier divisors are identified with principal Weil divisors. This proves the result.

**Theorem 5.4.4.** Let $X$ be a separated connected monoid scheme. If $X$ is locally factorial then every Weil divisor is a Cartier divisor, and $\text{Pic}(X) = \text{Cl}(X)$.

**Proof.** By Example 2.7.1, $X$ is normal since factorial monoids are normal. Thus $\text{Pic}(X)$ is a subgroup of $\text{Cl}(X)$, and it suffices to show that every Weil divisor $D = \sum n_i x_i$ is a Cartier divisor. For each affine open $U$, and each point $x_i$ in $U$, let $p_i$ be the generator of the prime ideals associated to $x_i$; then the divisor of $a_U = \prod p_i^{n_i}$ is the restriction of $D$ to $U$, and $D = \{(U, a_U)\}$.

**Lemma 5.4.5.** For the projective space monoid scheme $\mathbb{P}^n$, we have

$$\text{Pic}(\mathbb{P}^n) = \text{Cl}(\mathbb{P}^n) = \mathbb{Z}.$$ 

**Remark 5.4.6.** This calculation of $\text{Pic}(\mathbb{P}^n)$ formed the starting point of our investigation. We learned it from Vezzani (personal communication), but it is also found in [3] and [10]. Related calculations are in [17] and [21].

**Proof.** Since $\mathbb{P}^n$ is locally factorial, $\text{Pic}(\mathbb{P}^n) = \text{Cl}(\mathbb{P}^n)$. By definition, $\mathbb{P}^n$ is $\text{MProj}$ of the free abelian monoid on $\{x_0, \ldots, x_n\}$, and $A_0$ is the free abelian group with the $x_i/x_0$ as basis ($i = 1, \ldots, n$). On the other hand, $\text{Div}(\mathbb{P}^n)$ is the free abelian group on the generic points $[x_i]$ of the $V(x_i)$. Since $\text{div}(x_i/x_0) = [x_i] - [x_0]$, the result follows.

Before proceeding, we recall a definition from [5]. If $X = \text{MSpec}(A)$ is an affine monoid scheme, define its $k$-realization $X_k$ to be $\text{Spec}(k[A])$ where $k[A]$ is the $k$-realization of the monoid $A$ (see Section 3.2.1). The (affine monoid scheme) $k$-realization
functor has left adjoint \( \text{Spec}(R) \mapsto \text{MSpec}(R, \times) \) where \((R, \times)\) is the underlying multiplicative monoid of the \(k\)-algebra \(R\). If \(\text{MSch} \) denotes the category of monoid schemes, the adjunction

\[
\text{Hom}(\text{Spec}(R), X_k) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{MSch}}(\text{MSpec}(R, \times), X)
\]

defines a functor \( \text{Spec}(R) \mapsto \text{MSpec}((R, \times), X) \) represented by \(X_k\). If \(X\) is any monoid scheme and \(k\) a ring, define a contravariant functor \(F_X\) on the category of affine \(k\)-schemes to be the (Zariski) sheafification of the presheaf

\[
\text{Spec}(R) \mapsto \text{Hom}_{\text{MSch}}(\text{MSpec}(R, \times), X).
\]

It is shown in [5, 5.2] that \(F_X\) is represented by a \(k\)-scheme \(X_k\) which is the \(k\)-realization of \(X\). Note that this agrees with the previous definition when \(X = \text{MSpec}(A)\).

Let \(\Delta\) be a fan and \(X\) the toric monoid scheme associated to \(\Delta\) by [5, 4.2]. and \(X_k\) the usual toric variety associated to \(\Delta\) over some field \(k\). (\(X_k\) is the \(k\)-realization \(X_k\) of \(X\).) As pointed out in Example 5.2.6, our Weil divisors correspond to the \(T\)-Weil divisors of the toric variety \(X_k\) and \(\text{Cl}(X) \cong \text{Cl}(X_k)\). Moreover, our Cartier divisors on \(X\) correspond to the \(T\)-Cartier divisors of [8, 3.3]). Given this dictionary, the following result is established by Fulton in [8, 3.4].

**Theorem 5.4.7.** Let \(X\) and \(X_k\) denote the toric monoid scheme and toric variety (over \(k\)) associated to a given fan. Then \(\text{Pic}(X) \cong \text{Pic}(X_k)\).

Moreover, \(\text{Pic}(X)\) is free abelian if \(\Delta\) contains a cone of maximal dimension.

### 5.5 Pic of pc monoid schemes

In this section, we derive some results about the Picard group of pc monoid schemes. When \(X\) is a pc monoid scheme, we can form the reduced monoid scheme \(X_{\text{red}} = (X, A_{\text{red}})\) using Remark 2.6.3: the stalk of \(A_{\text{red}}\) at \(x\) is \(A_x/\text{nil}(A_x)\). Since \(A^x = A^x_{\text{red}}\), the map \(X_{\text{red}} \to X\) induces an isomorphism \(\text{Pic}(X) \cong \text{Pic}(X_{\text{red}})\).

We will use the constructions of normalization and seminormalization given in Section 5.1.
Proposition 5.5.1. If $X$ is a pc monoid scheme, the canonical map $X_{\text{sn}} \to X$ induces an isomorphism $\text{Pic}(X) \cong \text{Pic}(X_{\text{sn}})$.

Proof. Since $X_{\text{red}}$ and $X$ have the same underlying space, it suffices by Lemma 5.3.3 to assume that $X$ is reduced and show that the inclusion $A^\times \to A^\times_{\text{sn}}$ is an isomorphism. It suffices to work stalkwise, so we are reduced to showing that if $A$ is reduced then $A^\times \to A^\times_{\text{sn}}$ is an isomorphism. If $b \in A^\times_{\text{sn}}$ then both $b^n$ and $(1/b)^n$ are in $A$ for large $n$, and hence both $b = b^n + 1 + (b - b^{1+n})$ are in $A$, so $b \in A^\times$.

Lemma 5.5.2. Let $X$ be a cancellative seminormal monoid scheme and $p : X_{\text{nor}} \to X$ its normalization. If $\mathcal{H}$ denotes the sheaf $p_* (A^\times_{\text{nor}})/A^\times$ on $X$, there is an exact sequence

$$1 \to A(X)^\times \to A_{\text{nor}}(X_{\text{nor}})^\times \to H^0(X, \mathcal{H}) \to \text{Pic}(X) \xrightarrow{p_*} \text{Pic}(X_{\text{nor}}) \to H^1(X, \mathcal{H}).$$

Proof. At each point $x \in X$, the stalk $A = A_x$ is a submonoid of its normalization $A_{\text{nor}} = p_* (A_{\text{nor}})_x$ (by Lemma 2.7.2) and we have an exact sequence of sheaves on $X$:

$$1 \to A^\times \to p_* (A^\times_{\text{nor}}) \to \mathcal{H} \to 1.$$

Since $p$ is affine, Proposition 5.3.4 implies that $A_{\text{nor}}(X_{\text{nor}})^\times = H^0(X, p_* A^\times_{\text{nor}})$ and $\text{Pic}(X_{\text{nor}}) = H^1(X, p_* A^\times_{\text{nor}})$, and the associated cohomology sequence is the displayed sequence.

Here are two examples showing that $\text{Pic}(X) \to \text{Pic}(X_{\text{nor}})$ need not be an isomorphism when $X$ is seminormal and cancellative.

Example 5.5.3. Let $A_+$ (resp., $A_-$) be the submonoid of the free monoid $B = \langle x, y \rangle$ generated by $\{x, y^2, xy\}$ (resp., $\{x, y^{-2}, xy^{-1}\}$). These are seminormal but not normal.

If $X$ is the monoid scheme obtained by gluing the $U_\pm = \text{MSpec}(A_\pm)$ together along $\text{MSpec}(\langle x, y^2, y^{-2} \rangle)$ then it is easy to see that $\text{Pic}(X) = \mathbb{Z}$, with a generator represented by $(U_+, y^2)$ and $(U_-, 1)$. The normalization $X_{\text{nor}}$ is the toric monoid scheme $\mathbb{A}^1 \times \mathbb{P}^1$, and $\text{Pic}(X_{\text{nor}}) \cong \mathbb{Z}$, with a generator represented by $(U_+, y)$ and $(U_-, 1)$. Thus $\text{Pic}(X) \to \text{Pic}(X_{\text{nor}})$ is an injection with cokernel $\mathbb{Z}/2$.

Example 5.5.4. Let $U$ be an abelian group and $A_x$ the submonoid of $B = U_* \wedge \langle x \rangle$ consisting of 0, 1 and all terms $ux^n$ with $u \in U$ and $n > 0$. Note that $U_* \wedge \langle x \rangle$ my
be written $U \otimes \mathbb{F}_1[x]$ or simply $U[x]$ (see Section 2.3.1). Then $A_x$ is seminormal and $B$ is its normalization. Let $X$ be obtained by gluing $\text{MSpec}(A_x)$ and $\text{MSpec}(A_{1/x})$ together along their common generic point, $\text{MSpec}(U_x \wedge (x, 1/x))$. The normalization of $X$ is $X_{\text{nor}} = \text{MSpec}(U_x) \times \mathbb{P}^1$, and $\text{Pic}(X_{\text{nor}}) = \mathbb{Z}$ by Example 5.2.6 and Lemma 5.4.5. Because $p_*(A^\times_{\text{nor}})/A^\times$ is a skyscraper sheaf with stalk $U$ at the two closed points, we see from Lemma 5.5.2 that $\text{Pic}(X) = \mathbb{Z} \times U$. Thus $\text{Pic}(X) \to \text{Pic}(X_{\text{nor}})$ is a surjection with kernel $U$.

Finally, we consider the case when $X$ is reduced $\text{pc}$ monoid scheme which is not cancellative. We may suppose that $X$ is of finite type, so that the stalk at a closed point is an affine open $\text{MSpec}(A)$ with minimal points $p_1, \ldots, p_r$, $r > 1$. Then the closure $X'$ of the point $p_1$ is a cancellative seminormal monoid scheme. Let $X''$ denote the closure of the remaining minimal points of $X$, and set $X''' = X' \cap X''$. Then we have the exact Mayer-Vietoris sequence of sheaves on $X$:

$$0 \to A_X \to p'_*A_{X'} \times p''_*A_{X''} \to p'''_*A_{X'''} \to 1.$$

Because the immersions are affine, Proposition 5.3.4 yields the exact sequence

$$1 \to A(X)^\times \to A_{X'}^\times \times A_{X''}^\times \to A_{X'''}^\times \to \text{Pic}(X) \to \text{Pic}(X') \times \text{Pic}(X'') \to \text{Pic}(X'''). \quad (5.1)$$

The Picard group may then be determined by induction on $r$ and $\text{dim}(X)$.

**Example 5.5.5.** If $X$ is obtained by gluing together $X_1, \ldots, X_n$ at a common generic point, then (5.1) yields $\text{Pic}(X) = \oplus \text{Pic}(X_i)$. 
References


